

CAMBRIDGE

# ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary  
reference and  
practice

Third Edition

---

**Elementary**

Michael McCarthy  
Felicity O'Dell

Experience  
Better  
Learning

# ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary  
reference and  
practice

with answers  
and ebook

Third Edition

---

**Elementary**

Michael McCarthy  
Felicity O'Dell



CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

**CAMBRIDGE**  
**UNIVERSITY PRESS**

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India

79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

Information on this title: [www.cambridge.org/elt](http://www.cambridge.org/elt)

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2005

Third Edition 2017

*A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library*

ISBN 978-1-316-63152-2 Edition with answers and ebook

ISBN 978-1-316-63153-9 Edition with answers

ISBN 978-1-316-63154-6 ebook

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

# Contents

## Thanks

## Introduction

### People

- 1 The family *mother, uncle, relatives*
- 2 Birth, marriage and death *birthday, married, die*
- 3 Parts of the body *head, foot, shoulder*
- 4 Clothes *hat, shirt, trousers*
- 5 Describing people *tall, dark, good-looking*
- 6 Health and illness *headache, heart attack, exercise*
- 7 Feelings *love, tired, thirsty*
- 8 Conversations 1: Greetings and wishes *Good morning, Happy New Year, well done*
- 9 Conversations 2: Useful words and expressions *I don't mind, anyway, let's*

### At home

- 10 Food and drink *rice, tea, vegetables*
- 11 In the kitchen *fridge, glass, saucepan*
- 12 In the bedroom and bathroom *wardrobe, shampoo, mirror*
- 13 In the living room *bookshelf, lamp, remote control*

### School and workplace

- 14 Jobs *secretary, factory, nurse*
- 15 At school and university *biology, notebook, pass an exam*

- 16 Communications *address, computer, memory stick*

- 17 Your phone *apps, voicemail, text*

### Leisure

- 18 Holidays *package holiday, currency, visa*
- 19 Shops and shopping *chemist's, department store, credit card*
- 20 Online shopping *reviews, basket, delivery*
- 21 In a hotel *single room, key, luggage*
- 22 Eating out *café, menu, fish and chips*
- 23 Sports *table tennis, judo, volleyball*
- 24 Cinema *western, film star, director*
- 25 Free time at home *gardening, listening to CDs, programme*
- 26 Music and musical instruments *guitar, jazz, orchestra*

### The world

- 27 Countries and nationalities *Spain, Chinese, continent*
- 28 Weather *cold, rain, storm*
- 29 In the town *railway station, bank, town hall*
- 30 In the countryside *hill, farm, river*
- 31 Animals *horse, giraffe, pet*
- 32 Travelling *train, map, flight*
- 33 UK culture *fireworks, roast beef, Christmas*

## Social issues

- 34 Crime murder, prison, guilty
- 35 The media TV channel, magazine, talk show
- 36 Problems at home and work repair, untidy, in a bad mood
- 37 Global problems hurricane, war, strike

## Everyday verbs

- 38 Have / had / had have breakfast, have time, have a swim
- 39 Go / went / gone go away, go shopping, go home
- 40 Do / did / done do an exercise, do your best, do the washing
- 41 Make / made / made make coffee, make a mistake, make a noise
- 42 Come / came / come come in, come from, come back
- 43 Take / took / taken take the bus, take a photo, take an exam
- 44 Bring / brought / brought bring something here, bring back, take
- 45 Get / got / got get tired, get better, get married
- 46 Phrasal verbs get up, put on, turn down
- 47 Everyday things watch TV, wash clothes, go for a walk
- 48 Talking say, tell, ask
- 49 Moving walk, drive, fly

## Words and grammar

- 50 Conjunctions and connecting words because, only, before
- 51 Days, months, seasons Monday, July, winter
- 52 Time words next year, often, once a week
- 53 Places middle, front, abroad
- 54 Manner fast, loud, the right way
- 55 Common uncountable nouns money, bread, information
- 56 Common adjectives: Good and bad things nice, awful, lovely
- 57 Words and prepositions wait for, belong to, good at
- 58 Prefixes impossible, ex- wife, unsafe
- 59 Suffixes swimmer, useless, sunny
- 60 Words you may confuse quiet / quite, lend / borrow, cook / cooker

## Answer key

## Phonemic symbols

## Index

## Irregular verbs

## How to learn vocabulary

## Acknowledgements

# Thanks

Sabina Ostrowska wrote two new units for the Third Edition: Unit 17, *Your phone*, and Unit 20, *Online shopping*. The publishers would like to thank Sabina for her contribution to this new edition.

# Introduction

## To the student

This book will help you learn around 1, 250 new words and phrases. You can use the book yourself, without a teacher. You can do the units in any order you like. If you have the edition with the ebook, you can listen to the pronunciation of all the new vocabulary, and highlight text. see [page 171](#) for more information about the ebook.

Here is what the pages look like:

The image shows two pages from a textbook. The top page is titled '42 Come / came / come'. It features a diagram of a room with boxes and arrows indicating movement. Below the diagram are three sections: 'A Come in / out', 'B Come back and come home', and 'C Other important uses of come'. Each section includes definitions, example sentences, and mini-dialogues. The bottom page is titled 'Exercises' and contains four numbered exercises (42.1 to 42.4) with various task types like gap-fills, matching, and writing. A table at the bottom of the exercises page lists the words 'come', 'came', 'coming', and 'come back' with their respective meanings and examples.

The left-hand page presents the new vocabulary.

The left-hand page is divided into sections.

Common mistakes and learning tips are also given on the left-hand page.

The right-hand page practises the new vocabulary.

Pictures, tables and diagrams give variety to the exercises.

Diagrams and pictures show the meaning.

Example sentences show the words in context.

Mini-dialogues show how people use the words in real situations.

A lot of different exercise types are used: gap-fills, answering questions, matching, etc.

Over to you tasks give you a chance to do more work on the topic of the unit.

The Answer key at the end of the book is for you to check your answers to the exercises after you do them. The Answer key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because there is often not just one correct way of saying something. The Answer key also has possible answers for most of the exercises which are open-ended, or where you are asked to talk about yourself.

The Index at the end of the book has all the important words and phrases from the left-hand pages. The Index also tells you how to pronounce words. There is a list of phonemic symbols to help you understand the pronunciation on [page 158](#).

It is a good idea to have a dictionary with you when you use the book so you can check the meaning of something, or translate a word into your own language. sometimes, you will also need a dictionary for the exercises; we tell you when this is so. You also need a vocabulary notebook to write down new words. see [page 170](#) for ideas on how to learn and remember these new words.

We hope you like this book. When you have finished all the units in this book, you can go to the next book in the series, *English Vocabulary in Use: Pre-intermediate and Intermediate*, and after that, to the higher levels, *English Vocabulary in Use: Upper-intermediate* and *English Vocabulary in Use: Advanced*.

## To the teacher

This book can be used in class or as a self-study book. It is intended for learners at A1–A2 levels of the Council of Europe scale. It aims to take learners with a very basic level of vocabulary to a point where they can use approximately 2,000 words and phrases and teaches them around 1,250 new words and phrases. The vocabulary has been chosen for its usefulness in everyday situations, and we consulted a written and spoken corpus of present-day English to help us decide on the words and phrases to be included. The new vocabulary (on average 20–30 items per unit) is presented with photos or illustrations and explanations on the left-hand page, and there are exercises and activities on the right-hand page. There is an Answer key and an Index with pronunciation for all the key vocabulary.

The book focuses not just on single words, but also on useful phrases and collocations. For example, difficult teaching points such as the difference between **do** and **make** are dealt with through collocation (we **do** our homework, but we **make** mistakes), and useful phrases (e.g. **come along**) are presented.

The book is organised around everyday topics, but also has units devoted to core verbs such as **get** and **bring / take**. Typical errors are indicated where appropriate, and the most typical meanings and uses are focused on for each key item. The units in the book can be used in any order you like, but it is often a good idea to do blocks of units based round the same topic (e.g. *People, At home, Leisure*).

The right-hand pages offer a variety of different types of activities, including traditional ones such as gap-filling, but also more open-ended ones and personalised activities which enable learners to talk about their own lives. Although the activities and exercises are designed for self-study, they can easily be adapted for pairwork, groupwork or whole-class activities in the usual ways. For example, where there are dialogues, students can take the speaking parts and practise the conversations, and where the exercises have questions and answers, students can practise asking each other the questions and answering them. See who has the best ideas for recording vocabulary in their notebook. The Answer key sometimes gives alternative answers to the exercises, and also gives possible model answers for the more personalised ones.

When the learners have worked through a group of units, it is a good idea to repeat some of the work (for example, the exercises) and to expand on the meaning and use of key words and phrases by extra discussion in class, and find other examples of the key items in other texts and situations. This can be done at intervals of one to three months after first working on a unit. This is important, since it is usually the case that learners need five to seven exposures to a word or phrase before they can really know it, and no single book can do enough to ensure that words are always learnt first time.

When your students have finished and reviewed all the units in this book, they can move on to the next book in this series: *English Vocabulary in Use: Pre-intermediate and Intermediate*, by Stuart Redman.

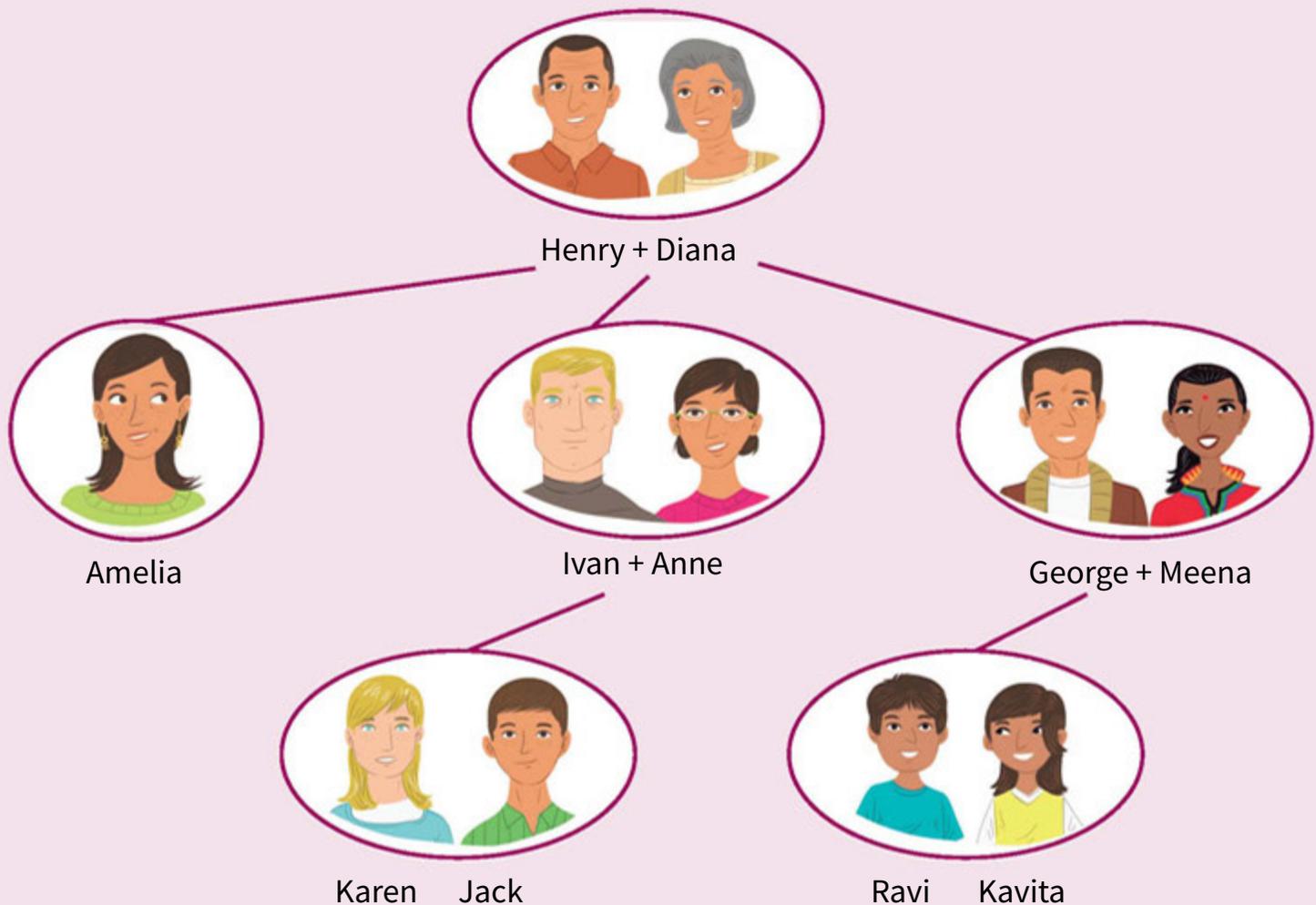
Find more resources for teachers at [www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

We hope you enjoy using the book.

## A

## Family words

A family tree for some of Anne and Ivan Sorokin's **relatives** or **relations**.

Ivan and Anne and their **children**

Ivan is Anne's **husband** and Karen and Jack's **father**.

Anne is Ivan's **wife** and Karen and Jack's **mother**.

Anne and Ivan are Karen and Jack's **parents**.

Karen is Anne and Ivan's **daughter**. Jack is their **son**.

Karen is Jack's **sister**. Jack is Karen's **brother**.

## Henry and Diana

Henry is Karen and Jack's **grandfather**. Diana is their **grandmother**.

Henry and Diana are Karen and Jack's **grandparents**.

Karen is Henry and Diana's **granddaughter**. Jack is their **grandson**.

## Amelia, George and Meena

George is Karen and Jack's **uncle**.

Amelia and Meena are Karen and Jack's **aunts**.

Karen is Amelia, George and Meena's **niece**. Jack is their **nephew**.

Kavita and Ravi are Karen and Jack's **cousins**.

## B

## Expressions

**Have you got any** brothers and sisters?

No, I am **an only child**.

**Do you come from a big family?**

Yes, I have three brothers and two sisters.

Common **mistakes**

We say 'my/his wife' (singular) but 'our/their wives' (plural).

# Exercises

## 1.1 Look at the family tree on the opposite page. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Kavita is Ravi's sister .....
- 2 Ravi is Kavita's .....
- 3 Anne is Kavita's .....
- 4 Ivan is Ravi's .....
- 5 Diana is Ravi's .....
- 6 Henry is Kavita's .....
- 7 Ravi is Ivan's .....
- 8 Kavita is Ivan's .....
- 9 Meena is Kavita's .....
- 10 Meena is George's .....
- 11 Karen is Ravi's .....

## 1.2 The Sorokins have some other relatives. Complete the sentences about them.



Sanjay



Alexander and Leila

Meena has a brother, Sanjay. Sanjay is Kavita and Ravi's <sup>1</sup> uncle ..... and Sanjay's wife is their <sup>2</sup> ..... . Sanjay and his wife have one son, Prem. Prem is an <sup>3</sup> ..... . Henry's parents are still alive. Alexander is Henry's <sup>4</sup> ..... and his <sup>5</sup> ..... Leila is Henry's <sup>6</sup> ..... . Alexander and Leila have three <sup>7</sup> ..... -Amelia, Ivan and George. Ivan and George and their <sup>8</sup> ..... , Anne and Meena, love their <sup>9</sup> ..... and visit them as often as possible.

## 1.3 Ask a friend these questions. Then write sentences about your friend and their family. For example, *Marta has one brother but no sisters.*

- 1 Have you got any brothers and sisters?
- 2 Have you got any cousins?
- 3 Have you got any nieces or nephews?
- 4 Have you got any grandparents?
- 5 Do you come from a big family?

## 1.4 Cover the opposite page. How many family words can you write down in two minutes? Check what you wrote carefully with the book. Did you spell everything correctly? Which words did you forget?

### Over to you

Draw your family tree. Then write sentences. Write about your relations. *Marta is my mother.*  
Use a dictionary to help you.

## A

## Birth

Anna **had a baby** yesterday.  
He **was born** at 1.15 yesterday morning.  
He **weighed** 3 kilograms.

They are going to **call** him John – **after** John, his grandfather. His grandfather's **birthday** is June 16th too – but he was born in 1957!  
The baby's parents **were born** in 1986.



## Common mistakes

Anna **had a baby** [NOT Anna got a baby].  
He/ She **was born** [NOT He/ She born or He/ She is born].

## B

## Marriage

If you do not have a partner, you are **single**.  
If you have a husband or wife, you are **married**.  
If your husband or wife dies, you are **widowed**.  
If your marriage breaks up, you are **separated / divorced**.  
[the marriage has legally ended]

Harry and Sarah **got married**.  
They (**got**) **married** in 2001.  
(*married* without *got* is more formal)  
They went on their **honeymoon** to Italy.  
They **were married** for 15 years.

## Common mistakes

Sarah **got married** to Harry [NOT with Harry].



(bride)  
groom

bride

## C

## Death

Then Harry became **ill**.  
He **died** last year.  
He **died of** a heart attack.

## Common mistakes

Harry is dead [NOT Harry is died or Harry is death].



The funeral

# Exercises

## 2.1 Think of people you know. Where were they born? When?

- 1 *My mother was born in Scotland on July 4th 1967.*
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

## 2.2 Find a word on the opposite page which means ...

- 1 the name for a woman on her wedding day. *bride*
- 2 the name for a man on his wedding day.
- 3 what you are if you haven't got a partner.
- 4 to be 57 kilograms.
- 5 what you are if your marriage has legally ended.
- 6 a religious service for a dead person.
- 7 a holiday after a wedding.
- 8 what you are if your husband or wife dies.

## 2.3 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

in after of to born on

<sup>1</sup> in 2003 Anne got married <sup>2</sup> ..... Daniel Smith. Unfortunately, Daniel's grandmother, Lydia Smith, died <sup>3</sup> ..... old age soon after their wedding. Daniel and Anne were <sup>4</sup> ..... their honeymoon when she died. Anne's baby daughter was <sup>5</sup> ..... two years later. They called the baby Lydia, <sup>6</sup> ..... Daniel's grandmother.

## 2.4 When were these people born and when did they die? Write sentences.

- 1 Genghis Khan (1162–1227) *Genghis Khan was born in 1162 and died in 1227.*
- 2 Christopher Columbus (1451–1506)
- 3 Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)
- 4 Princess Diana (1961–1997)
- 5 Heath Ledger (1979–2008)



## 2.5 Complete the sentences using died, dead or death.

- 1 Kelly's grandfather *died* ..... last year.
- 2 His ..... made her very sad.
- 3 Her grandmother has been ..... for five years now.
- 4 She ..... of a heart attack.
- 5 Now all Kelly's grandparents are .....

## 2.6 Write about your family. Use words and expressions from the opposite page.

Here are some ideas for making your sentences.

I have ..... . I/my .....  
got married in ..... (year).  
For my/his/her honeymoon, I/he/she went  
to .....

I have / My ..... has .....  
children. They were born in ..... and  
..... (years).

# 3

## Parts of the body

A

### Head and face



B

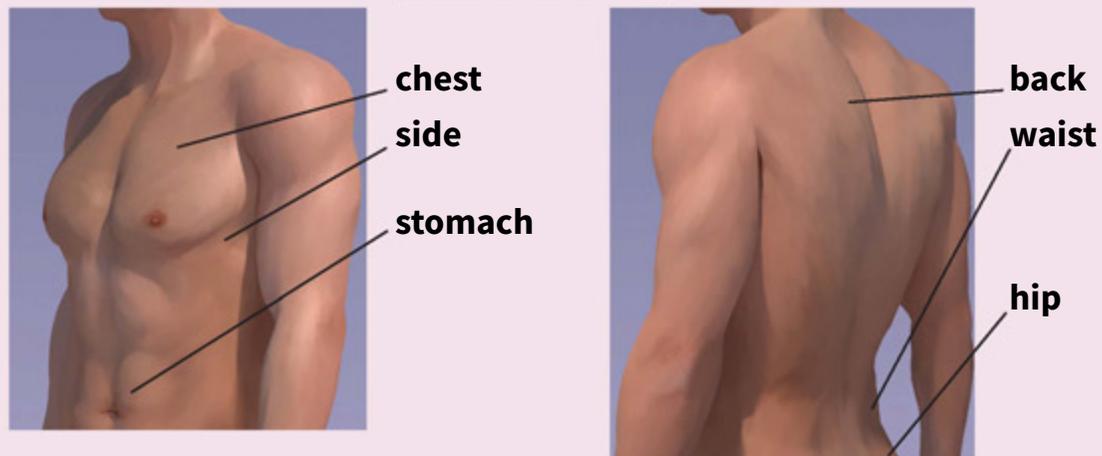
### Arm and leg



C

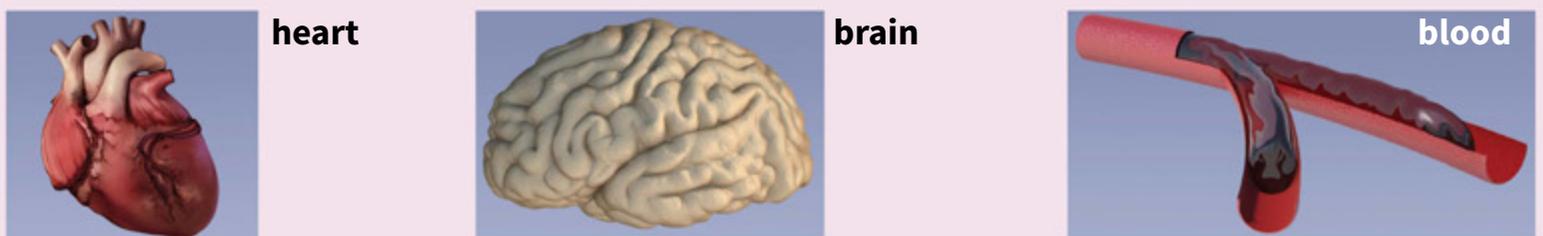
### Rest of body

We have **skin** covering our bodies.



D

### Inside the body



E

### Pronunciation problems

eye /aɪ/ knee /ni:/ stomach /'stʌmək/ heart /hɑ:t/ blood /blʌd/ foot /fʊt/ tooth /tu:θ/

F

### Singular and plurals

one foot – two feet      one tooth – two teeth

Hair is a singular word. My hair is very long – I must cut it soon.

#### Common mistakes

Usually we use my, your, his, her, etc. with parts of the body.

Katie is washing her hair [NOT Jane is washing the hair]. I have a pain in my leg [NOT I have a pain in the leg].

(See Unit 6: Health and illness.)

# Exercises

## 3.1 Here are the names of some parts of the body with the letters mixed up. What are they?

- |            |             |          |       |
|------------|-------------|----------|-------|
| 1 eken     | <i>knee</i> | 6 are    | ..... |
| 2 osen     | .....       | 7 hotot  | ..... |
| 3 rathe    | .....       | 8 buhtm  | ..... |
| 4 hamcost  | .....       | 9 akbc   | ..... |
| 5 olderush | .....       | 10 tiwas | ..... |

## 3.2 Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1 A hand has five <i>fingers</i> . | 6 You hear with your .....              |
| 2 A foot has five .....            | 7 The child sat on her father's .....   |
| 3 An adult has 32 .....            | 8 Your ..... type can be A, B, AB or O. |
| 4 You smell with your .....        | 9 You think with your .....             |
| 5 The ..... is a symbol of love.   |   |

## 3.3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- I have a pain in the side. *I have a pain in my side.*
- That woman has got very big foots.
- My grandfather has a pain in the shoulder.
- The baby has already got two tooths.
- The little girl needs to wash the face and the hands before dinner.
- My hairs are dirty. I need to wash them.

## 3.4 Parts of the body are often used in compound nouns too. Complete these nouns with a word from the opposite page.



1 *arm* chair



3 .....stick



5 .....scarf



2 .....ball

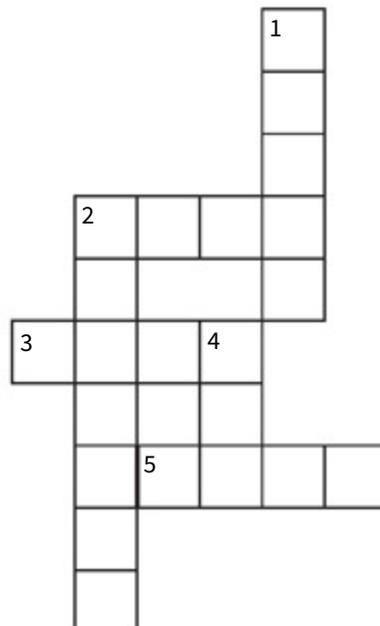
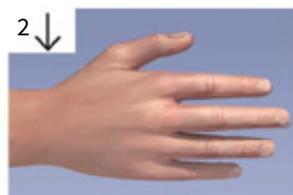


4 .....brush



6 .....bag

## 3.5 Complete the crossword. Look at the pictures.



## A

## Clothes



## B

## Plural words

These words are always plural in English. They need a plural verb.



My suit **is** new but these trousers **are** old. Her jeans / shorts / tights **are** blue.  
 Note: You say: **a pair of** trousers / shorts / glasses, etc.

## C

## Verbs

You **wear** clothes but you **carry** things.

You **wear** glasses.

Naomi **is wearing** a long blue coat.

She's **carrying** a suitcase and a **handbag**.

You can also say: Naomi **has (got)** a blue coat **on**.

You **carry** a **bag** and an **umbrella**.



In the morning you **get dressed** or **put** your clothes **on**. At night you **get undressed** or you **take** your clothes **off**.

## Common mistakes

You **put clothes on** but you **take clothes off**  
 [NOT ~~put clothes off~~].

## Tip

When you get dressed in the morning, say to yourself *Now I'm putting on my socks. Now I'm putting on my shoes* and so on.

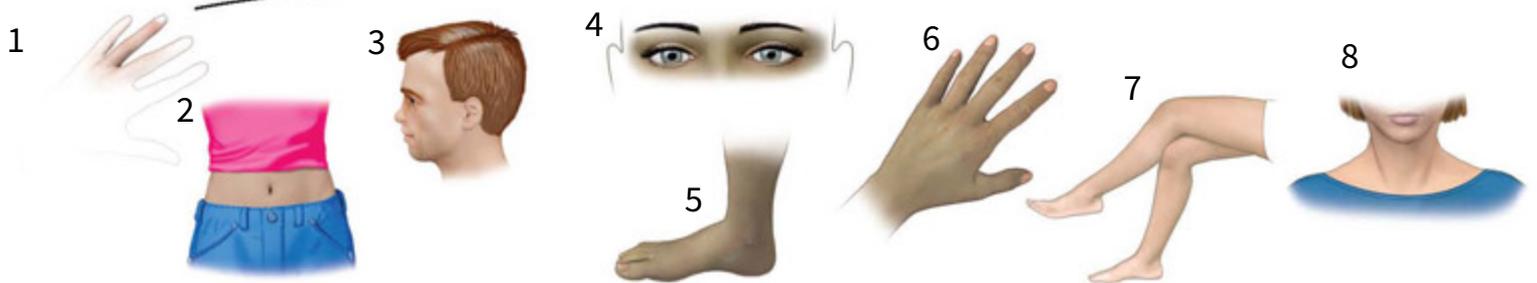
# Exercises

## 4.1 Complete the sentences.

- Joe has a job interview today, so he's wearing a smart suit....., a white sh..... and a t.....
- Julia's not working today, so she's wearing a T-..... and sh.....s.
- Lucy is going to play tennis. She's wearing white s.....s and tr.....s.
- Gianni is going to a business meeting. He's.....ing a b..... with his papers and laptop.
- My trousers are too big. I have to wear a b.....
- It's cold today. I'll wear my j....., and I'll take my c..... too.

## 4.2 Match the item of clothing with the part of the body.

scarf belt shoe hat glove glasses tights ring

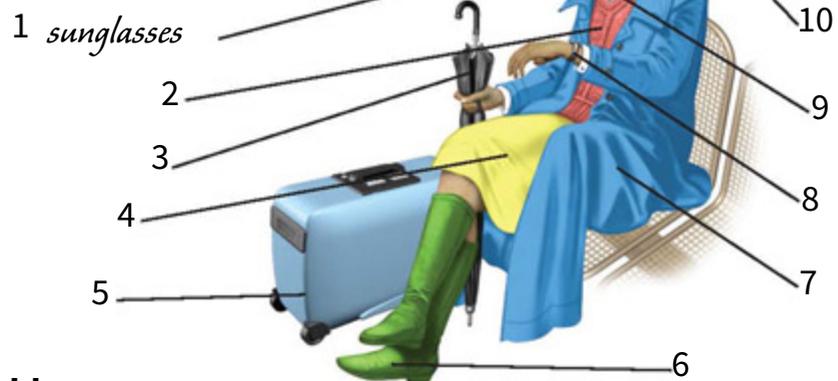


## 4.3 Complete the sentences with one of the verbs in the box and put it in the right form.

be wear carry have

- Tim's jeans *are*..... blue and his T-shirt..... red.
- Julia..... jeans and a T-shirt today.
- Meena..... got a red coat on and she..... some flowers.
- Sarah's dress..... old but her shoes..... new.
- Last year Harry's trousers..... white. Now they..... grey.
- ..... this a new pair of jeans?
- My favourite pyjamas..... dark green.
- Kim..... a new pair of shorts.

## 4.4 Label the picture.



## 4.5 Complete the verbs in the table.

morning	night
get <i>dressed</i> .....	get.....
or..... your clothes on	or..... your clothes off

## 4.6 What are you wearing today? Use a dictionary to help you.

*I'm wearing a white T-shirt and a blue jumper. I've got a pair of black trousers on. I'm wearing blue socks and white trainers. I've also got a watch and a pair of glasses on.*

## A

**Height** /ha t/ and **weight** /we t/

Bettina Schwenke is a very **tall** woman.  
Tom Jakes is quite **short**.  
If you aren't tall or short, you are of **medium height**.

Agata Sanchez is really **slim**.  
I was very **thin** when I was in hospital.  
[slim is more polite than thin]

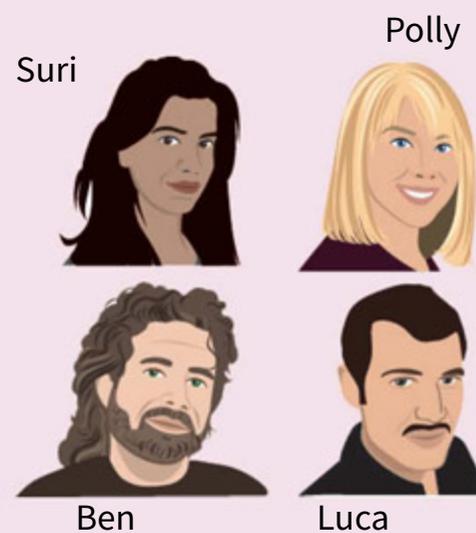
The doctor said I am **overweight**. [weigh too much]  
Their cat is very **fat**. It needs to go on a diet.



## B

**Face and head**

Suri has **dark skin** and **dark hair**. She has **brown** eyes.  
Polly has **blonde** (or **fair**) **hair** and **fair skin**. She has **blue** eyes.  
Ben has a **beard** and **long hair**. He has **green** eyes.  
Luca has a **moustache** /mʊ'staɪf/ and **short hair**.  
You can also use **has got**, for example, Suri **has got dark hair** and **dark skin**.  
My mother is a very **beautiful** woman. [very pretty]  
My dad's a very **good-looking** man.

**Common mistakes**

People are tall [NOT People are high].  
People have blonde or dark hair [NOT hairs].

My sister is **pretty**. (usually girls / women only)  
Bob's an **ugly** man. [**ugly** = the opposite of **beautiful** or **good-looking**]  
I'm not ugly or beautiful, I'm just **average-looking**!

## C

**Age**

My grandmother is 97. She's very **old**. My sister is 14. She's **young**, but would like to be **older**. My father is 56. He's **middle-aged**, but would like to be **younger**!  
This hospital is for **elderly** people. (more polite than **old**)

## D

**Expressions**

A: **How tall** is Bettina / Tom? B: She's 1.85 metres tall. / He's 1.48 metres tall.  
A: **How heavy are you?** / **How much do you weigh?** B: I weigh 62 kilos / 74 kilos, etc.  
A: **How old is he?** B: He's 84.  
A: **What does** Gemma / your sister **look like?**  
B: She's tall and dark. She's very pretty.

**Tip**

Some of the words on this page are a little negative, so be careful how you use them. It's better not to say to someone:  
'You are fat / thin / ugly / old.'

# Exercises

## 5.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 He's only 1 metre 52. He's quite *short* .....
- 2 Very ..... people are often good at basketball.
- 3 Models are usually .....
- 4 Does she have dark skin? No, it's .....
- 5 She's only seven. She's very .....
- 6 If I eat too much I'll be .....
- 7 My grandmother is in this hospital. It's a hospital for ..... people. (don't use 'old')

## 5.2 Complete the questions using the words in brackets ().

- 1 *How tall is your brother?* ..... (your brother)  
He's about 1 metre 75.
- 2 Is ..... ? (Elena's hair)  
No, she's got dark hair.
- 3 Is ..... ? (Mike's hair)  
Yes, it is quite long.
- 4 Are ..... ? (your parents)  
Not really, they're middle-aged.
- 5 Is ..... ? (his sister)  
Yes, she's very pretty.
- 6 Why ..... ? (Sara, so thin)  
She's very ill.

## 5.3 Write sentences about the people in these pictures.



Felicity



Jeff



Anika



Stefan

- 1 Felicity's *got blonde hair and fair skin.* .....
- 2 Jeff has .....
- 3 Anika's got .....
- 4 Stefan's hair is ..... and he .....

## 5.4 Write questions.

- 1 your brother, height *How tall is your brother?* .....
- 2 your teacher, looks .....
- 3 you, weight .....
- 4 your mother, age .....
- 5 your sister, height .....
- 6 your parents, looks .....

## 5.5 Now write answers to the questions in 5.4.

- 1 *He's not very tall. He's 1 metre 52.*

### Over to you

Write down the names of three people you know. Then write about their:

- height (tall, short, medium height)
- eyes (colour)
- hair (colour, long, short, beard)
- looks (pretty, average-looking, etc.)

**A How are you today?**

I'm **very well**, thanks.

I'm **fine**, thanks.

I **don't feel very well**. I must go home and rest. (I'll probably be OK tomorrow.)

I **feel ill**. Can you get a **doctor**, please? (Perhaps it's a serious problem.)

That fish was bad. I think I'm going to be **sick!** (I want to vomit.)

**B Everyday problems**

Have you got an **aspirin**? I've got a **headache**. / hede k/



I've got **toothache**. /'tu:θeɪk/ I need to go to the **dentist**.



I'm going to bed with a hot drink. I've got a **cold**.

**C Problems people have for many years / all their lives**

I get **hay fever** every summer, from flowers and grass. I **sneeze** all day. /sniz/

My little brother has **asthma**; sometimes he can't breathe. /'æ smə/

**D Illnesses in hot / tropical countries**

**mosquito**

In some countries, mosquitoes can give people

**malaria**. /mə'leəriə/

The drinking water was bad, and many children had **cholera**. /'kɒlərə/

**E Serious illnesses**

Every year **cancer** kills many people who smoke. /'kæ nsə/

My father went to **hospital** when he had a **heart attack**.

**Common mistakes**

My father **had a heart attack**

[NOT get a heart attack].

**F Expressions**

**A** Do you **have a healthy diet**?

**B** Yes, I eat lots of fruit and vegetables.

**A** Do you **exercise**?

**B** Yes, I like swimming, jogging and cycling. They're really **good for you**.

**A** I **feel stressed!**

**B** Do you? You need to **relax** more and don't panic about work!

# Exercises

## 6.1 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: How are you today?  
B: *Very well, thanks.*.....  
A: Good!
- 2 A: Are you OK?  
B: No,.....  
A: Would you like to use the bathroom?  
B: Yes, thank you.
- 3 A: I.....  
B: I'll get a doctor.  
A: Oh, thank you.
- 4 A:.....  
B: Here's the dentist's phone number.  
A: Thanks.
- 5 A: Your nose is red. Have you got.....?  
B: Yes.  
A: Have a hot drink and go to bed early.

## 6.2 Match the illnesses in the table with a possible treatment.

go to the dentist    take an aspirin    go to hospital    go to bed with a hot drink

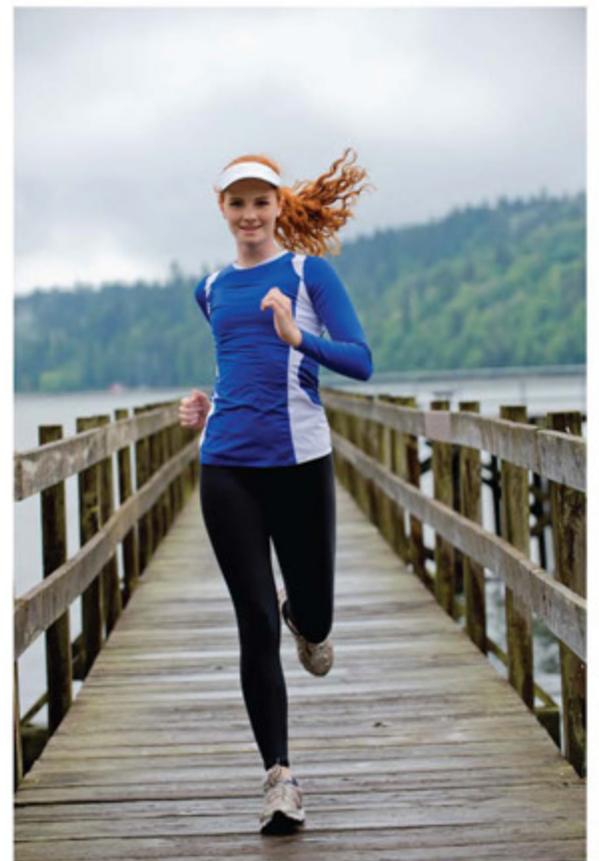
illness	treatment
a headache	<i>take an aspirin</i>
toothache	
a heart attack	
a cold	

## 6.3 What illnesses are connected with ...

- 1 a mosquito bite? *malaria*
- 2 bad drinking water?
- 3 pollution, traffic fumes, etc.?
- 4 grass, flowers, sunshine, etc.?
- 5 smoking, unhealthy diet, no exercise?

## 6.4 Answer these questions. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 Do you have a healthy diet?
- 2 What exercise do you do?
- 3 Do you often feel stressed?
- 4 Have you ever been in hospital?
- 5 Do you get hay fever in summer?



## A Love, like and hate

++  
love+  
like-  
don't like--  
hate

I **love** my family and my best friend.  
I **like** my job.  
I **don't like** horror films.  
I **hate** spiders.



## B Happy, sad and tired



happy



sad



angry



upset



cold



hot



thirsty



hungry



well



ill



tired



surprised

## Common mistakes

I am very **happy about** your news [NOT I am very happy for your news]. BUT You did very well in your exam – I'm very **happy for** you.

## C Prefer, hope and want

I **prefer** coffee **to** tea. (= I **like** coffee **more than** I like tea.)

I **hope to do** well in my exam.

I **hope (that)** my friend does well in his exam.

I **want** a new car. [I would like]

I **want to buy** a new car.

Note: I **want my mother to buy** a new car.

## Common mistakes

I **want you to help me** [NOT I want that you help me].

## D Expressions

A **Do you like** football?

B Yes, I **really like** football / it.  
No, I **don't like** football / it very much.

A How's your grandfather?

B He's **very well**, thanks.

A And **how about** your grandmother?

B She's **a bit / a little tired**.

## Common mistakes

[NOT I very like football / it. or I like very much football / it.]

# Exercises

## 7.1 Do you love, like, not like or hate these things? Write sentences.

- |                |                          |              |
|----------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| 1 chocolate    | <i>I love chocolate.</i> | 5 football   |
| 2 cowboy films |                          | 6 cats       |
| 3 flying       |                          | 7 cars       |
| 4 tea          |                          | 8 jazz music |

## 7.2 Which do you prefer? Write answers.

- |                              |                                |                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 tea or coffee?             | <i>I prefer coffee to tea.</i> | 4 cars or bikes?                     |
| 2 dogs or cats?              |                                | 5 strawberry or chocolate ice cream? |
| 3 sunbathing or sightseeing? |                                | 6 watching sport or doing sport?     |

## 7.3 Answer these questions using *want* or *hope*.

- You're thirsty. What do you want? *I want glass of water.*
- The lesson feels very long. What do you hope?
- You're hungry. What do you want?
- Your friend feels ill. What do you hope?
- You're tired. What do you want to do?
- You're upset. What do you want to do?
- It's very cold weather. What do you hope?
- Your friend feels sad. What do you want?

## 7.4 Look at the pictures. How do the people feel? Use words from B opposite.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1  Jessica <i>is hungry.</i> ..... | 4  Sunita .....       |
| 2  Nicholas .....                  | 5  Fiona .....        |
| 3  Max .....                       | 6  The children ..... |

## 7.5 Correct the mistakes.

- I very like basketball. *I like basketball very much.*
- I am happy for my sister's good news.
- The teacher wants that we learn these new words.
- I like really spiders.
- My brother has a good new job. I'm very happy about him.
- My parents want that I go to university.
- I feel very well. How for you?
- Priya is bit tired this morning.

### Over to you

When did you last feel ...

- 1 surprised    2 hungry    3 tired    4 angry

*I felt surprised yesterday when I saw the news.*

# 8

# Conversations 1: Greetings and wishes

## A

### Every day



good morning



good afternoon



good evening



When we leave someone we usually say **Goodbye** and also perhaps **See you soon!** See you soon is quite informal.

When someone goes to bed, we usually say **Goodnight**. We sometimes also say **Sleep well**.

Don't say **Goodnight** when you arrive somewhere, only when you leave.

If you ask for something you usually say **Please**.

If someone does something nice for you, you say **Thank you** or **Cheers** (informal).



## B

### Special days

When:	you say:
it's someone's birthday	<b>Happy Birthday!</b>
it's Christmas	<b>Happy / Merry Christmas!</b> /'krɪsməs/
it's New Year's Day	<b>Happy New Year!</b>
someone is doing something difficult, e.g. taking an exam or having an interview for a job	<b>Good luck!</b>
someone has done something special, e.g. done well in an exam or had a baby	<b>Congratulations! / Well done!</b>

### Common mistakes

When it's someone's birthday we say: **Happy Birthday** [NOT Congratulations].

# Exercises

## 8.1 Choose one of the phrases from the opposite page to fit the dialogues.

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1 A: (sneezes) Atishoo!                | 5 A: It's my birthday today. |
| B: <i>Bless you!</i>                   | B: .....                     |
| 2 A: I'm taking my driving test today. | 6 A: How are you?            |
| B: .....                               | B: .....                     |
| 3 A: I passed my driving test!         | 7 A: Hello!                  |
| B: .....                               | B: .....                     |
| 4 A: Goodbye.                          | 8 A: Here's your tea.        |
| B: .....                               | B: .....                     |

## 8.2 What is the person saying in the pictures?



## 8.3 What do you say? Choose a phrase from the opposite page.

- You want to go through a doorway. There are some people blocking it. *Excuse me!*
- A friend buys you a drink.
- A child says 'Goodnight' to you.
- You answer the phone at work. It is 10.30 am.
- You answer the phone at work. It is 3 pm.
- It is 2 am on January 1st. You meet a friend in the street.
- You are on a very crowded bus and you stand on someone's foot.
- It is 24th December. You meet a friend on the bus.

## 8.4 You meet Ann, an English friend. Reply to her.

- ANN: Good evening.  
 YOU: *Hello.*  
 ANN: How are you?  
 YOU: .....  
 ANN: It's my birthday today.  
 YOU: .....  
 ANN: Would you like a drink?  
 YOU: .....  
 ANN: Here you are.  
 YOU: .....

## 8.5 Write a conversation between you and a friend. He / She has passed an exam.

## A

## Words

word	example	meaning
actually	People say bad things about her, but she's <b>actually</b> very nice.	in reality
really	The book is <b>really</b> good.	very
else	Do you want to buy anything <b>else</b> ? Or go somewhere <b>else</b> ?	in addition or different
around	I'll meet you at <b>around</b> 6 o'clock.	about or approximately
anyway	I'll drive you home. I'm going that way <b>anyway</b> . <sup>1</sup> <b>Anyway</b> , as I said, I woke up very late today. <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> to give a reason for doing something <sup>2</sup> to return to an earlier subject

## Common mistakes

**Actually** is a false friend in some languages - in English it means 'in reality' NOT 'now'.

## B

## Expressions

- A: **Why don't** we go to the cinema this evening? (used to make a suggestion)  
 B: Good idea. **Let's** go and see a film and then have a meal. (used to make a suggestion)  
 A: OK! Which film do you want to see?  
 B: **I don't mind**. [It's all the same to me.] **It's up to you**. [You can decide.]  
 A: **How about** / **What about** the new Angelina Jolie film? (used to make a suggestion)

## Common mistakes

**Why don't we go ...** [NOT ~~Why don't we going~~] or **Let's go ...** [NOT ~~Let's going~~].  
**How about going ...** [NOT ~~How about go~~] or **What about going ...** [NOT ~~What about go~~].

- A: I was late for work today.  
 B: **Oh dear!** Was your boss angry? (used when you are surprised or disappointed)  
 A: I forgot to bring your book!  
 B: Oh, **it doesn't matter**. I don't need it. [it's not important]  
 A: I'm sorry, but I can't come to your party.  
 B: **What a pity!** (used when you are disappointed)  
 A: I passed my exam.  
 B: **Well done!**  
 A: **Hurry up!** The taxi's here. [be quick]  
 A: **Look out!** / **Be careful!** There's a car coming.  
 A: We need to buy Marta's birthday present.  
 B: **Absolutely!** What about getting her a scarf? (used when you agree strongly)  
 A: **I agree**. Let's go shopping this afternoon.

## Common mistakes

**I agree** or **I don't agree** [NOT ~~I am agree~~ or ~~I'm not agree~~].

# Exercises

## 9.1 Choose a word from A opposite to complete the sentences.

- 1 It's boring here. Let's go somewhere *else*.
- 2 There were ..... 20 people at the lecture.
- 3 It's a ..... lovely photo!
- 4 Have you had enough to eat? Would you like anything ..... ?
- 5 He said he was a doctor but he's ..... still a medical student.
- 6 The journey takes ..... two hours.

## 9.2 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I don't like skiing and *about / anyway / else* I'm not free that weekend.
- 2 I don't *mind / matter / agree* what we do. It's all the same to me.
- 3 *It's up to you / Let's / I agree* invite Rachel to dinner tonight.
- 4 *Be careful / What a pity / Oh dear* in London. There's lots of traffic there.
- 5 I don't have time to go to the cinema and *really / absolutely / anyway* I've seen that film already.

## 9.3 Choose an expression from the box to fit these situations.

Well done!	Oh dear!	What a pity!
Hurry up!	It's up to you.	Look out!



## 9.4 Correct the eight mistakes in the dialogue.

- VERA: We need to celebrate. I got a new job!  
 LUKE: Well ~~made!~~ *done*  
 How about go out for a meal this evening?
- VERA: Great! Let go to that Italian restaurant. Or do you prefer the Chinese one?  
 LUKE: I don't mind it. I like the Italian one but it's very expensive.  
 VERA: Oh, it isn't matter.  
 LUKE: OK. Why don't we going to the Italian restaurant and then we could go to the cinema afterwards? Your new job needs a special celebration.
- VERA: I'm agree. And I'd love to see that film with George Clooney. Would you?  
 LUKE: Absolute!

## A

### Everyday food

Would you like some **bread**?

I love sushi because I love **rice**.

**Pasta** is good for you, but don't eat too much!

I always put **salt** on my **chips**, but not **pepper**.

My sister never eats **meat** or **fish**. She's **vegetarian**.

Do you take **sugar** in **tea** or **coffee**?



### Common mistakes

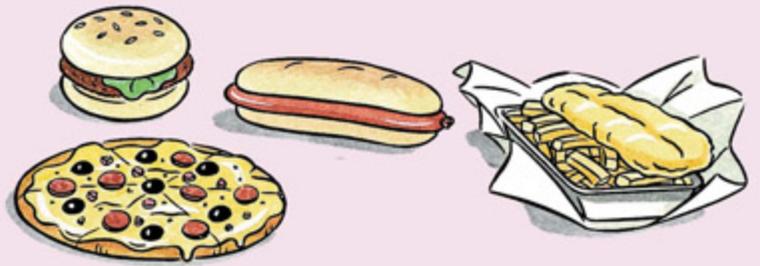
Can I have **some bread**? [NOT Can I have a bread?]

## B

### Fast food

I eat **hamburgers**, **hot dogs** and **pizzas** when I don't have much time.

**Fish and chips** is popular in Britain, Australia and New Zealand.

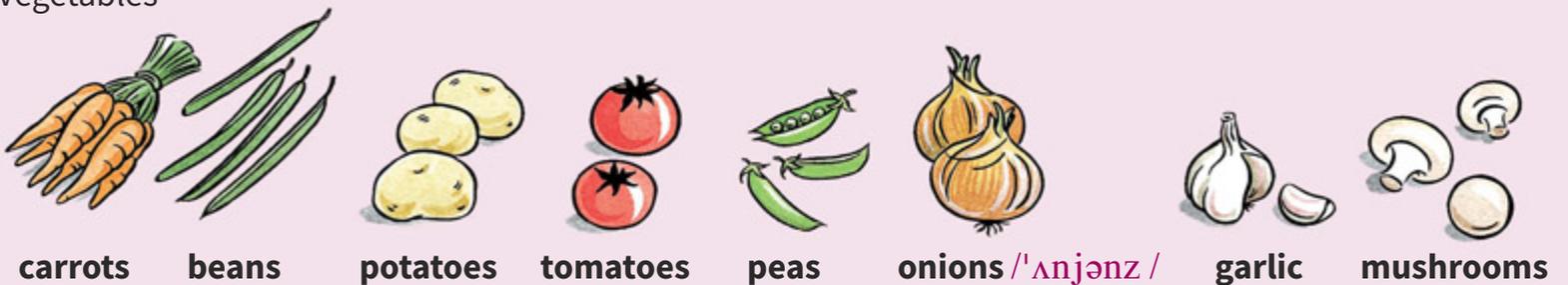


## C

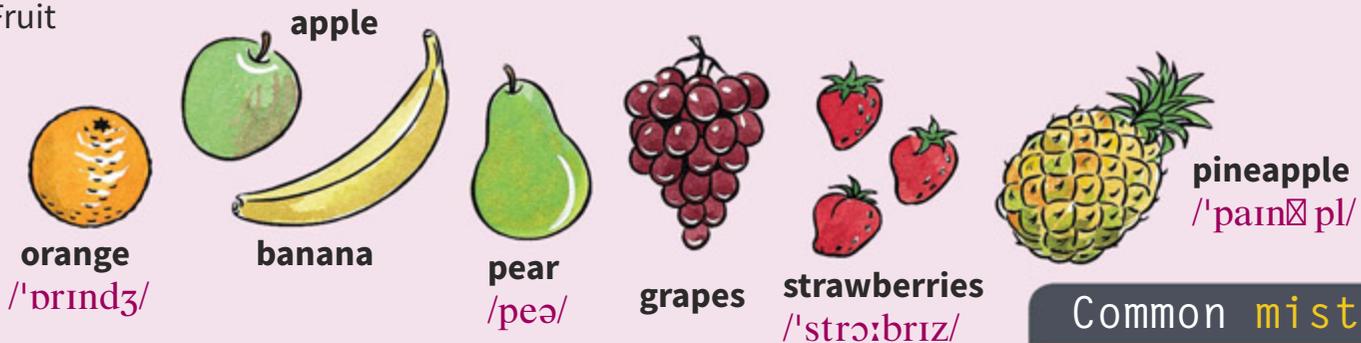
### Fruit /fru:t/ and vegetables /'vedʒtəbəlz/

**Vegetables** are good for you. **Fruit** is also good for you. (singular, uncountable)

Vegetables



Fruit



### Common mistakes

I love **fruit** [NOT I love fruits].

## D

### Drinks



### Tip

Go to a supermarket. How many different kinds of food or drink have English names on them? Try to learn some of them.

# Exercises

## 10.1 Complete the sentences. Use words from the opposite page.

- 1 *Rice* ..... is popular in Japan.
- 2 ..... and ..... are very popular in Italy.
- 3 Chips are made from .....
- 4 Many British people eat .....
- 5 Hamburgers are made from .....
- 6 A ..... is a sausage inside a piece of bread.

## 10.2 Put these words into two lists: fruit and vegetables.

beans pineapple grapes onions apple carrot garlic pear mushrooms

fruit	vegetables
	<i>beans</i>

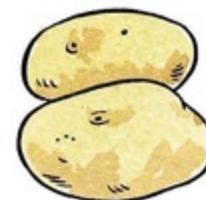
## 10.3 Write the names of these fruit and vegetables.



1 *banana* .....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

## 10.4 Here are the names of some drinks with the letters mixed up. What are they?

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 eta <i>tea</i> ..... | 4 fecofe .....        |
| 2 rebe .....           | 5 rituf eciju .....   |
| 3 klim .....           | 6 nilemar retaw ..... |

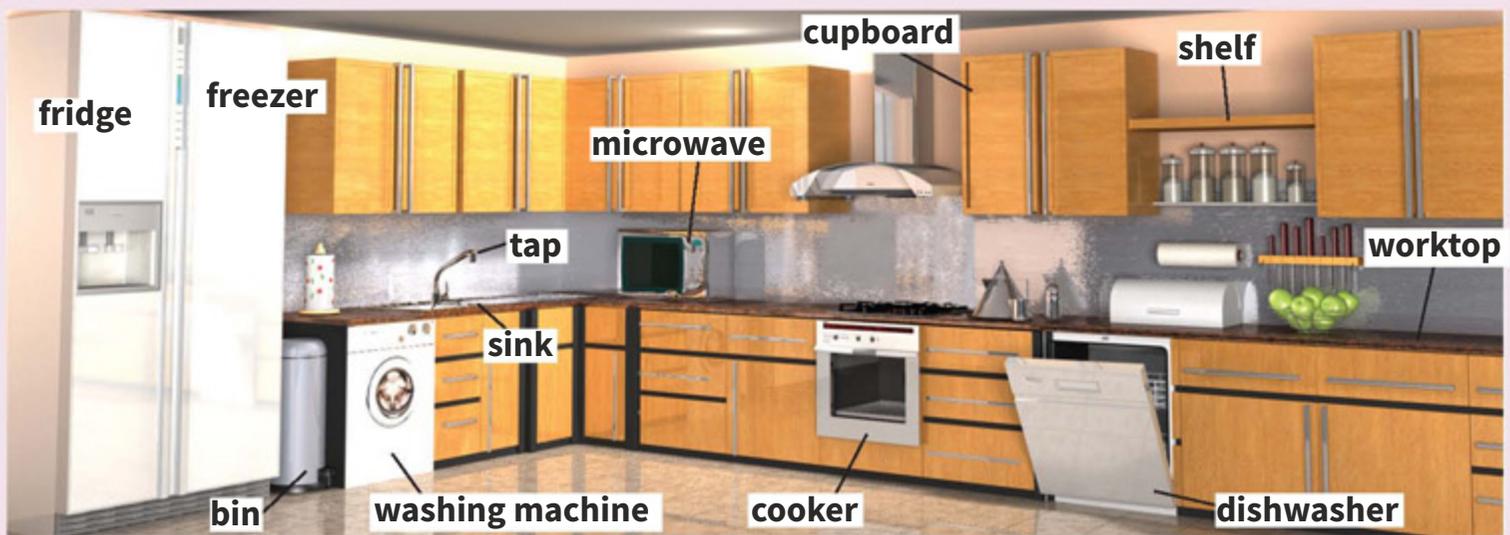
## 10.5 Choose a, b or c.

- 1 Vegetarians do not eat a) vegetables **b) meat** c) fast food.
- 2 Garlic is a kind of a) fruit b) fast food c) vegetable.
- 3 You put a) salt b) beer c) sugar in coffee.
- 4 Which is correct a) pinapple b) pineapple c) pieapple?
- 5 The first sound in **o**nion is the same as the sound in a) **f**un b) **o**range c) **m**an.
- 6 A pear is a) a drink b) a vegetable c) a fruit.

## 10.6 What are your four favourite foods? And your three favourite drinks? Are they good for you? Use a dictionary to help you.

A

What's in the kitchen?



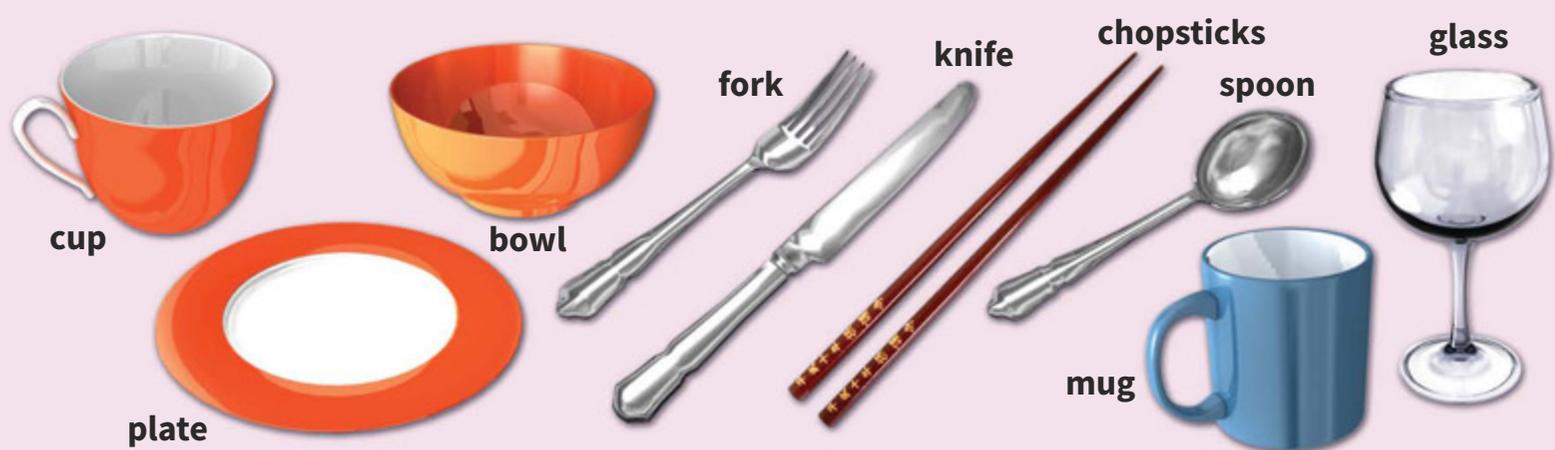
B

Things we use in the kitchen



C

Things we use for eating and drinking



D

Expressions

A: **Where can I find** a mug / a cloth / some kitchen roll? B: They are in the cupboard.A: **Can I help with the** washing-up / cooking? B: Yes, please! You can **dry** the plates. / You can **cook** some rice.A: **Where does** this cup / plate / frying pan **go**? B: Put it in this cupboard, please.

## Tip

Stick labels on objects in your kitchen with their English names on them. You will see these every day and this will help you to learn the words.



# Exercises

## 11.1 Tick (✓) yes or no. Write sentences for the wrong answers.

- |  | yes | no |
|--|-----|----|
| 1 I use a frying pan to drink out of.        |     | ✓  |
| 2 You use washing-up liquid to clean plates. |     |    |
| 3 The fridge is cold inside.                 |     |    |
| 4 The fridge is colder than the freezer.     |     |    |
| 5 I turn on the tap to get water.            |     |    |
| 6 A tea towel is for making tea.             |     |    |
- I use a glass / a cup / a mug to drink out of.*

## 11.2 Make questions for these answers. Use words from the opposite page.

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 <i>Where's the coffee?</i> ..... | It's in the cupboard.                                |
| 2 .....                            | It's on the cooker.                                  |
| 3 .....                            | Please put them on the worktop.                      |
| 4 .....                            | Thanks. You can wash these plates and I'll dry them. |
| 5 .....                            | In the fridge on the bottom shelf.                   |

## 11.3 What do you need?

- 1 To make coffee I need *a coffee maker, a cup, a spoon.* .....
- 2 To make tea I need .....
- 3 To fry something I need .....
- 4 To eat my food I need .....
- 5 To drink some water I need .....
- 6 To cook dinner in two minutes I need .....
- 7 To wash plates, knives and forks I need .....
- 8 To wash my clothes I need .....

## 11.4 Look at the picture. Answer the questions.

- 1 What's on the cooker? *a saucepan* .....
- 2 What's on the shelf? .....



- 3 What's in the cupboard under the shelf? .....
- 4 Where's the microwave? .....
- 5 What's next to the sink? .....
- 6 What's under the sink? .....

(See **Unit 53: Places.**)

### A

#### Bedroom



bed



bedside lamp



alarm clock



pyjamas



dressing table



chest of drawers



mirror



wardrobe



bedside table



comb



hairbrush

### B

#### Bathroom



shower



soap



shampoo



toothpaste



shower gel



toothbrush



razor



toilet



shelf

basin



towel

### C

#### Emma's routine

Emma **goes to bed** at 11 o'clock. She **goes upstairs** to her bedroom.



She **gets undressed** and gets into bed.



She reads for a bit.



She **turns off** the light and **falls asleep**.



She **wakes up** when her alarm clock rings.



She **gets up**.

She **has a shower**,



**cleans her teeth**



and **gets dressed**.



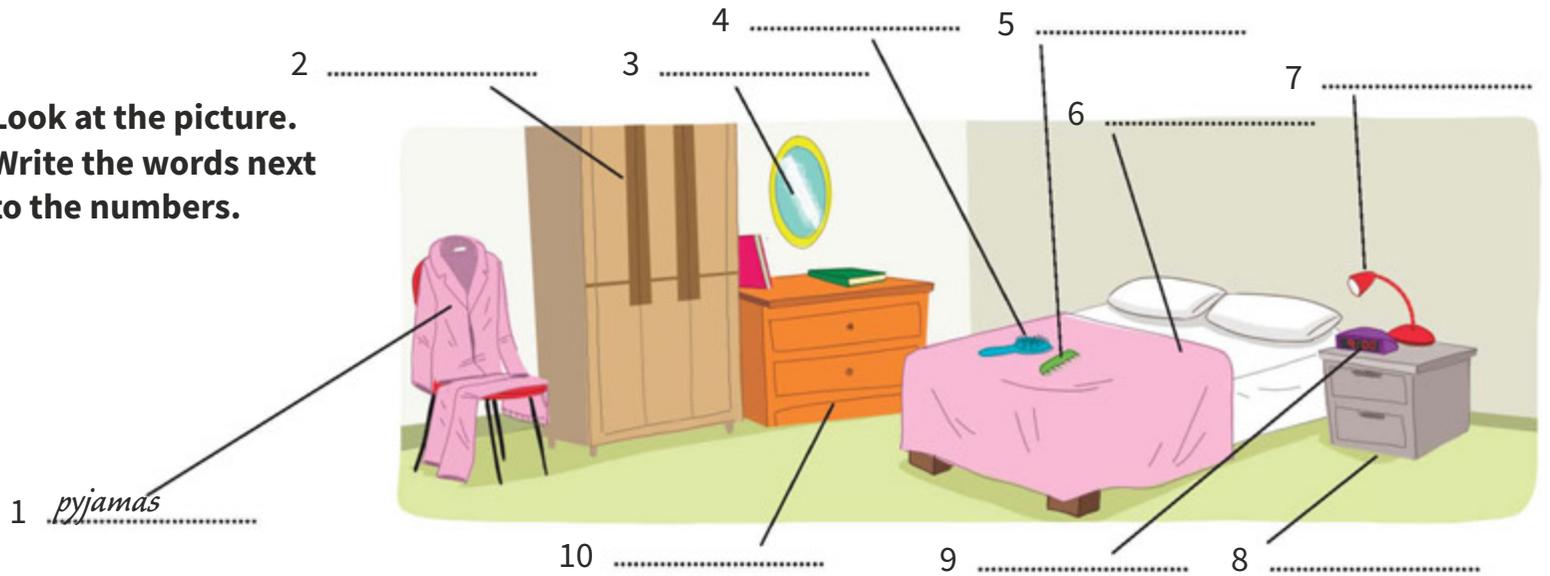
She **goes downstairs** to the kitchen for breakfast.



(See **Unit 47: Everyday things**.)

# Exercises

**12.1** Look at the picture. Write the words next to the numbers.



**12.2** Write down five more things that you need to take with you if you go to stay with a friend for one night.

*toothbrush* .....  
 .....  
 .....

**12.3** Look at the pictures. Describe what the people are doing.



1 Anne *is cleaning her teeth.* .....



3 Mrs Park .....



5 Jaime .....



2 Selim and Umit .....



4 Mr Park .....



6 Lee .....

**12.4** What is in your bathroom? Write the things down. Use a dictionary to help you.

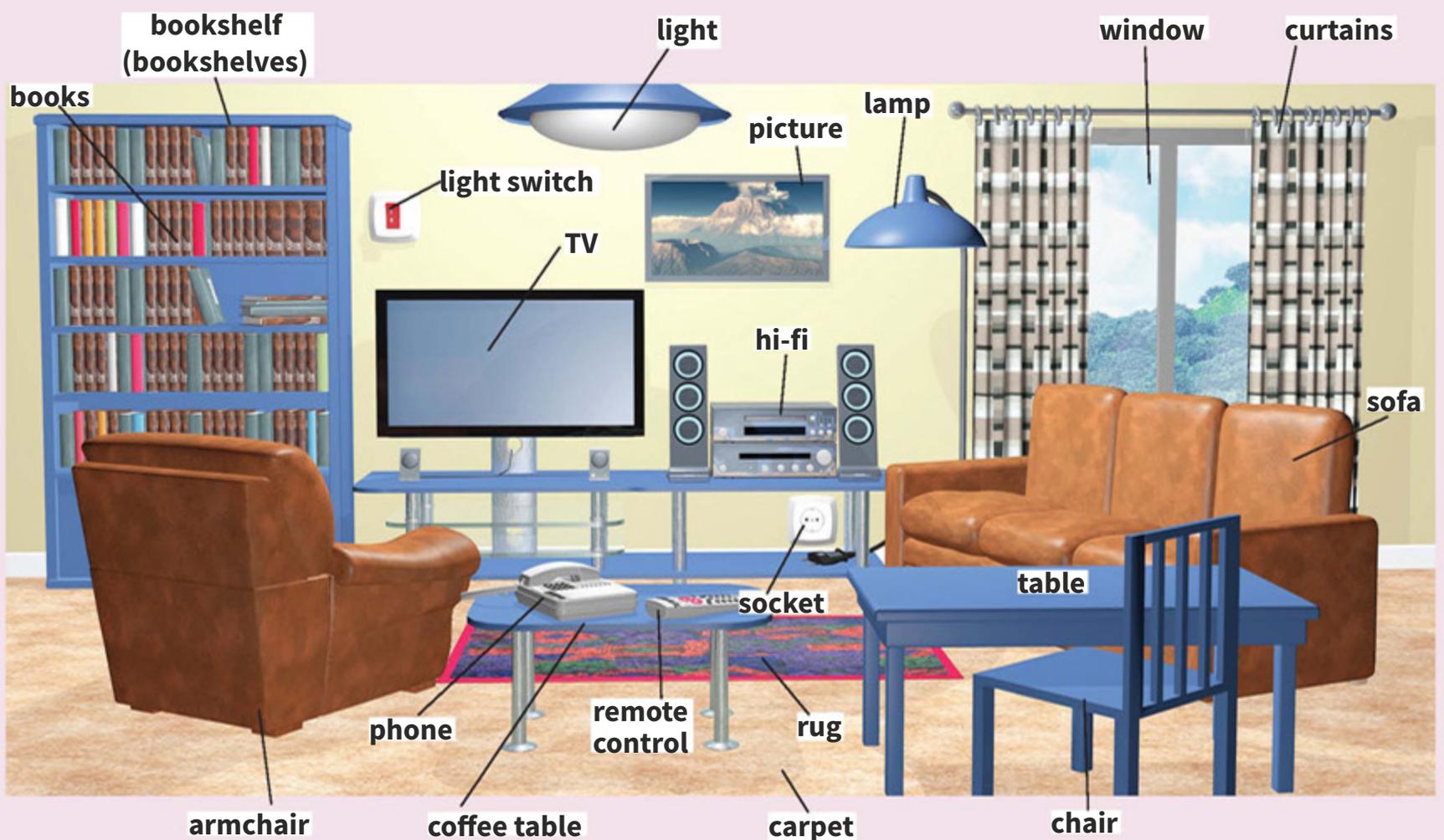
**12.5** Are these sentences true about your bedroom? If not, change them to make them true.

- 1 My bedroom is upstairs. *My bedroom is not upstairs. I live in a flat.*
- 2 My bedroom has one large window.
- 3 In my bedroom there is a big bed.
- 4 There are two wardrobes, one on the left and one on the right of the room.
- 5 I have a small bedside table.
- 6 I've got a lamp and an alarm clock on my bedside table.
- 7 There is a chest of drawers under the window.
- 8 I haven't got a dressing table.

**12.6** Complete this paragraph about your night-time and morning routine.

I usually <sup>1</sup> *go* ..... to bed at <sup>2</sup> ..... I get <sup>3</sup> ..... and <sup>4</sup> ..... into bed. I usually read <sup>5</sup> ..... a bit. I turn <sup>6</sup> ..... the light and <sup>7</sup> ..... asleep. I <sup>8</sup> ..... up when my alarm clock rings. I get <sup>9</sup> ..... I have a <sup>10</sup> ..... , <sup>11</sup> ..... my teeth and <sup>12</sup> ..... dressed. I go to the kitchen for breakfast.

## A Things in the living room



## B Useful verbs



Every evening I **watch television**.



Sometimes I **listen to the radio** or **listen to music**.



Sometimes I **read a book**.



Sometimes I **just relax**.  
[rest and do nothing]

## C Expressions



It's getting dark. Can you **close the curtains**, please?



OK. And I'll **switch the light** on.



Thanks. Now can you **turn the radio off**? And **pass me the remote control**. I want to **turn on the TV**. There's a good programme on.

## Common mistakes

The furniture in my room **is** white [NOT The furniture in my room ~~are~~ white].

# Exercises

## 13.1 Write the names of ...

- somewhere you can put books. *a bookshelf*
- somewhere two or three people can sit.
- somewhere you can put down your cup.
- something you can look at on the wall.
- something for switching the light on or off.
- something for listening to music.
- something under your feet.
- something for changing channels on the TV.

## 13.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 switch on the | a TV             |
| 2 relax in an   | b lamp           |
| 3 close the     | c remote control |
| 4 pass the      | d radio          |
| 5 listen to the | e armchair       |
| 6 watch         | f curtains       |

## 13.3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- This evening let's just relax us at home.
- I don't often listen the radio.
- We need some more bookshelves in this room.
- I watched at television all evening yesterday.
- It's dark now. Please make the curtains.
- Liam has some very nice furnitures in his house.

*This evening let's just relax at home.*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 13.4 Find 10 more words from this unit in the wordsearch.

F	T	A	L	W	X	A	R	O	C	F	Y	D
E	R	L	S	O	C	K	E	T	U	I	I	U
D	K	A	G	L	N	T	B	C	R	I	E	F
R	E	M	O	T	E	C	O	N	T	R	O	L
A	Y	P	F	C	H	A	I	R	A	P	J	I
D	E	C	H	K	I	R	G	T	I	R	U	G
I	B	O	O	K	F	P	S	I	N	E	B	H
O	G	F	E	A	I	E	L	H	S	C	R	T
S	U	A	T	L	E	T	V	C	A	E	U	O

### Over to you

Write about your living room at home. You can draw a plan of it first. What furniture is there in the room? What colour are the walls? Are there any pictures on them? What do you do when you are in your living room?

## A

## What's his/her job?



doctor



teacher



nurse



mechanic



secretary



shop assistant



hairdresser



engineer



farmer

## B

## Jobs in the town



police officer



traffic warden



librarian



bank clerk /k/ k/

## C

## Expressions

**Sam** What's your **job**?

**Ben** I'm a **waiter**. I work in a **restaurant**. What **do** you do?

**Sam** I'm a **taxi driver**.

**Ben** Is it an interesting **job**?

**Sam** Yes, I like it. Where do you **work**?

**Sophie** I work in an **office**. Sometimes it's boring.



My dad works in a **factory** which makes car parts.  
I worked in a **shop** at the weekends when I was a student.  
I want to work in a **beauty salon** as a **hairdresser**.  
I'd like to work in a children's **hospital**.  
I'm a writer. I work **at / from** home.

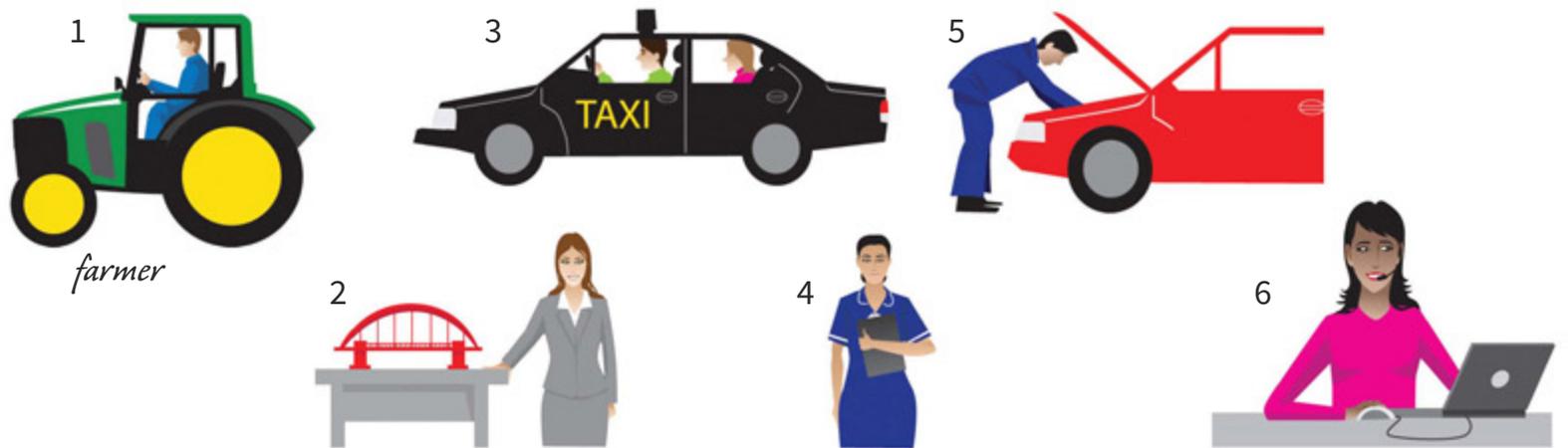
# Exercises

## 14.1 Where do they work?

- 1 A teacher *works in a school / college / university.* .....
- 2 A doctor .....
- 3 A waiter .....
- 4 A secretary .....
- 5 A shop assistant .....
- 6 A hairdresser .....

## 14.2 Match the pictures with the jobs in the box.

nurse    farmer    secretary    taxi driver    engineer    mechanic



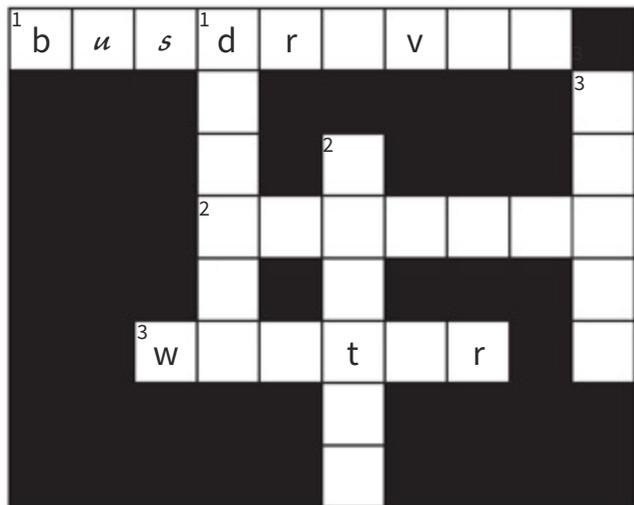
## 14.3 Complete the crossword.

### Across

- 1 works on a bus
- 2 works in a school
- 3 writes books

### Down

- 1 works in a hospital
- 2 works in a restaurant
- 3 works with the doctor



## 14.4 Complete the sentences.

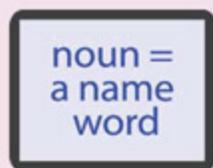
- 1 He works in a *factory*..... which makes electrical goods.
- 2 She's an ..... . She builds roads and bridges.
- 3 The traffic ..... is checking all the parked cars.
- 4 The ..... told me to return the book at the end of the month.
- 5 The bank ..... changed some money for me.
- 6 A police ..... told me the way to the station.

## 14.5 Answer the questions for yourself.

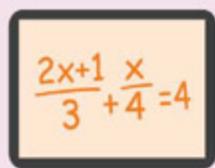
- 1 What do you do?
- 2 Where do you work?
- 3 Is it an interesting job?

## A

## Subjects



English



maths



art



history



geography



biology



ICT (information communication technology)



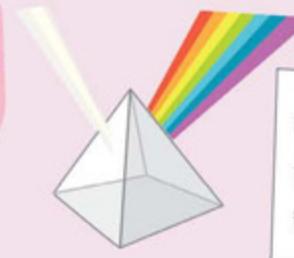
PE (physical education)



chemistry



modern languages



physics



music

## B

## Useful things

board



noticeboard



piece of paper



pencil



notebook



rubber

drawing pin



OHP (overhead projector)



textbook



pencil sharpener



board rubber



board pen



whiteboard

pen



computer



DVD player



desk



ruler

## C

## Expressions

A maths **teacher teaches maths**. Her **students study maths**.

Children **go to school** and students **go to university**.

At school children **learn to read and write**.

Students can **do an (English) course** in many schools and universities. At the end of a course, you often **take / do an exam**. You hope to **pass your exams**. You don't want to **fail your exams**.

If you pass your final exams at university, you **get a degree**.

## Common mistakes

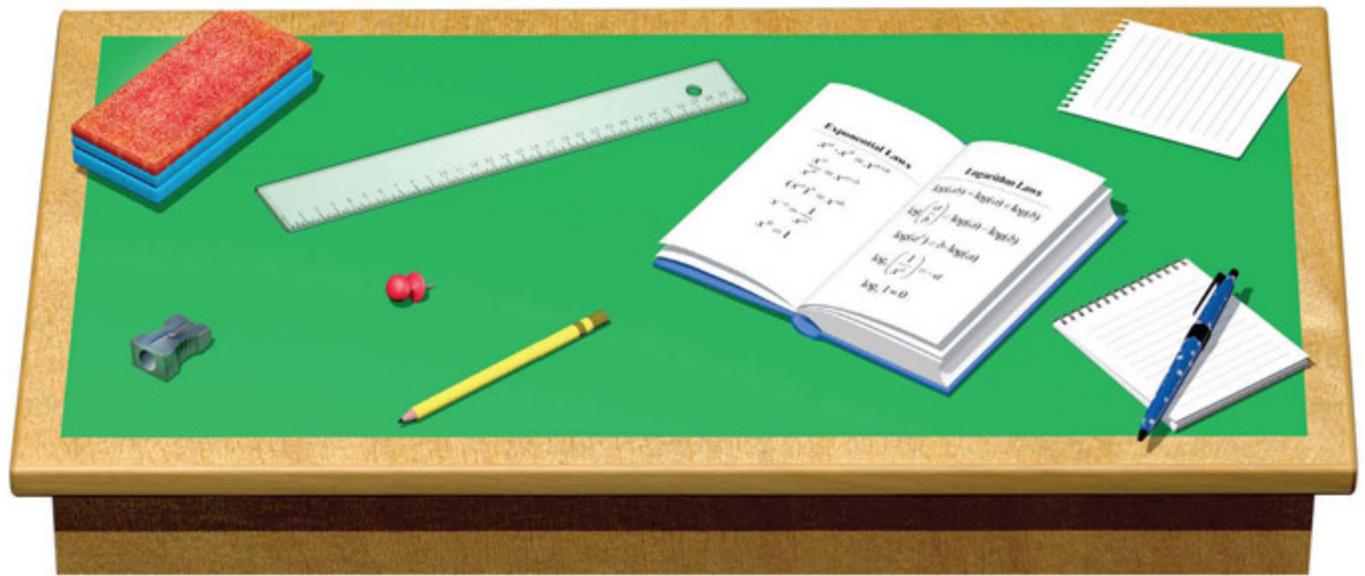
After school, students **do homework** [NOT make homework or do homeworks]. (See Units 40 and 41 for more expressions with do and make.)

# Exercises

## 15.1 Match the subject on the left with what you study on the right.

- |             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| 1 maths     | a animals and plants         |
| 2 physics   | b sport                      |
| 3 history   | c $25y + 32x = 51z$          |
| 4 geography | d $E = mc^2$                 |
| 5 PE        | e $H_2O$                     |
| 6 English   | f the countries of the world |
| 7 chemistry | g the 15th century           |
| 8 biology   | h computers                  |
| 9 ICT       | i spelling                   |

## 15.2 Look at the picture for 30 seconds. Then cover it. How many of the ten objects can you remember? Write them down in English.



## 15.3 Which of the things in B on the opposite page are in the room where you study English? Write them here.

In the room where I study English I can see .....

.....

.....

## 15.4 Choose a verb from C opposite to fill the gaps below. Put the verb in the correct form.

Ethan does well at school. He finds it easy to <sup>1</sup> *learn* ..... and he always <sup>2</sup> ..... his homework. He usually <sup>3</sup> ..... all his exams. He will <sup>4</sup> ..... his final school exams soon. If he <sup>5</sup> ....., he will <sup>6</sup> ..... to university next year. If he <sup>7</sup> ....., he will be very sad. Ethan really wants to <sup>8</sup> ..... geography at university. He would also like to <sup>9</sup> ..... a special geology course. His sister is already at university. Next year she will <sup>10</sup> ..... her degree and then she will try to find a job.

## 15.5 Which are/were your three favourite subjects? Which subjects (if any) do / did you not like?

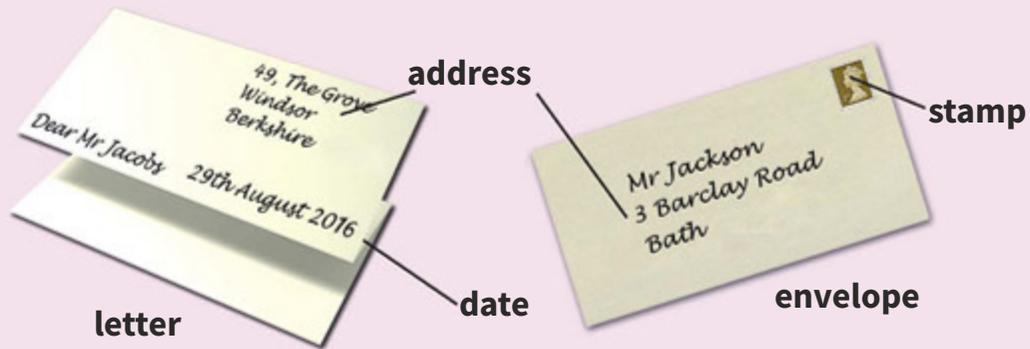
.....

.....

### Tip

Draw two columns on a piece of paper. In one column write five words from the opposite page which you want to learn. In the second column put a drawing (or a translation or a definition). Cover the first column and look at the second column. Can you remember the English words?

## A Letters



letter box

Don't forget to put a **stamp** on the **envelope**.  
Don't forget to **post** the letters.

## B Email and Internet



computer



screen



keyboard



mouse



laptop



memory stick

Olivia gets a lot of **emails** from New York.  
You have to be careful what information you give people **online**.  
What's your **email address**? [Moll@cup.com](mailto:Moll@cup.com) (= Moll **at** C-U-P **dot** com /**kpm**/)

## C Telephones and mobile devices



mobile device



mobile



telephone



phone box

Juan **makes** a lot of **phone calls**. He phones his girlfriend every day.



I always take my smartphone with me. I never turn it off.  
What's your **phone number**? What's your **mobile** number?  
066530718 (= oh six six five three oh seven one eight / oh double six five ...)  
He's not answering his phone. I'll leave a **voicemail** and I'll **text** him / **send** him a **text (message)**.

## D Expressions

**Sue** Hello.

**Nick** Hello. **It's** Nick **here**. Can I **speak to** Ahmed, please?

**Sue** I'm sorry, he's not here at the moment. Can I **take a message**?

**Nick** Thanks. Could you just **tell him I called**. I'll **call back** later.

**Sue** OK. I'll tell him. Goodbye.

**Nick** Bye.

## Tip

Use a search engine to find an example of a letter and an email in English. Write down any useful words or phrases in them.

# Exercises

**16.1** Have you got any of the things on the opposite page? Make a list.

*mobile*

**16.2** What are the names of these things?



- |                         |         |         |          |
|-------------------------|---------|---------|----------|
| 1 <i>keyboard</i> ..... | 4 ..... | 7 ..... | 10 ..... |
| 2 .....                 | 5 ..... | 8 ..... | 11 ..... |
| 3 .....                 | 6 ..... | 9 ..... | 12 ..... |

**16.3** Complete this phone conversation.

AMELIA: Hello.  
 MEENA: Hello. <sup>1</sup> *It's* ..... Meena here. Can I <sup>2</sup> ..... to Amal, please?  
 AMELIA: I'm <sup>3</sup> ....., he's at work <sup>4</sup> ..... the moment. Can I <sup>5</sup> .....  
 a message?  
 MEENA: It's all right. I'll <sup>6</sup> ..... back later.  
 AMELIA: OK, then. Bye.  
 MEENA: Bye.

**16.4** Write down:

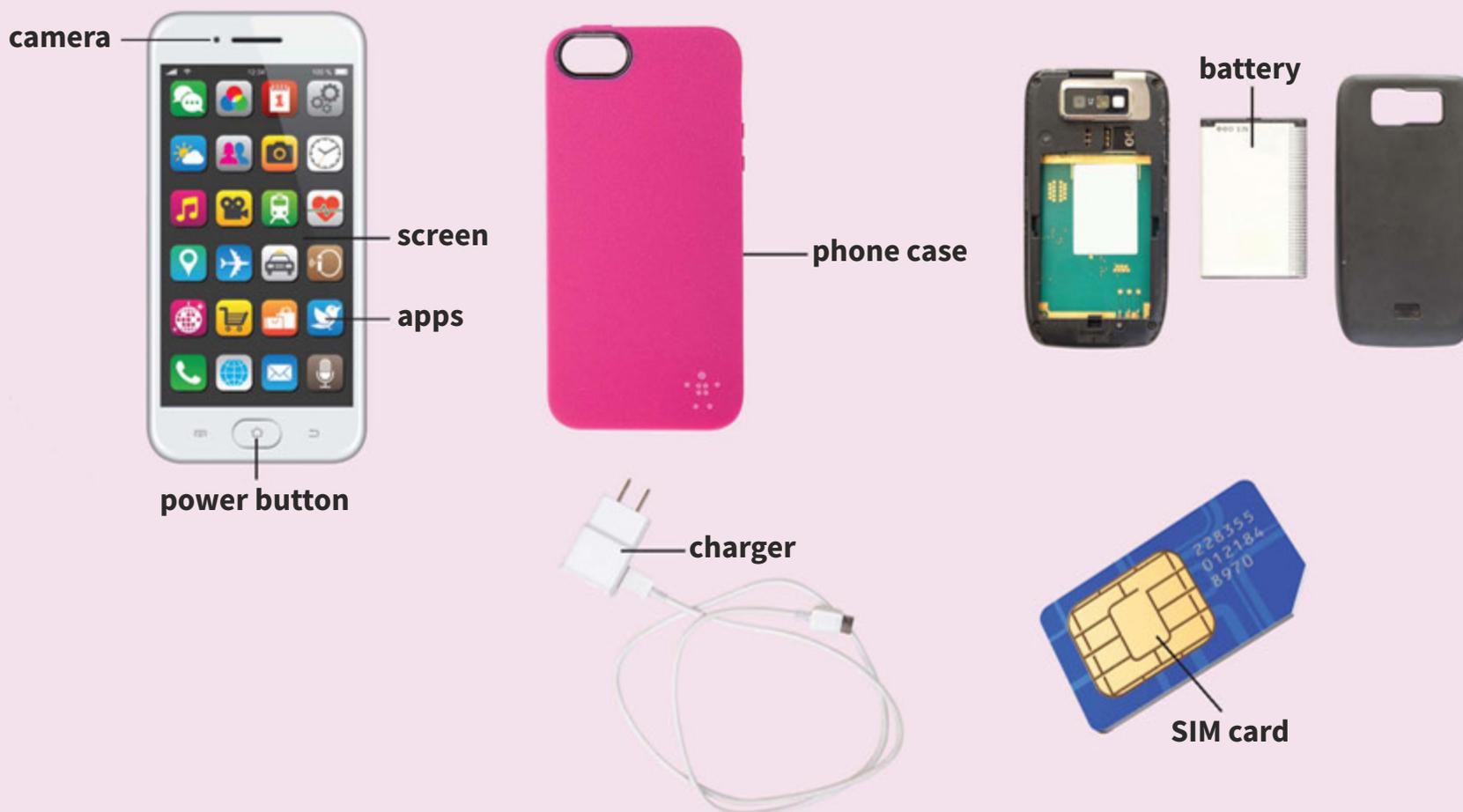
- two telephone numbers that are important to you.  
 .....
- two email addresses that are important to you.  
 .....

**Now read them aloud.**

**16.5** Answer these questions.

- Do you prefer to text or phone your friends?
- Do you send more emails or more text messages?
- How often do you go online?
- Do you prefer to use a laptop or a mobile device?
- Do you often write letters?

## A Parts of a phone



## B Using a smartphone

Ramesh **takes** a lot of **selfies** and posts them online.

Lisa didn't answer her phone, so I **left a voicemail**.

Can you **text** me the address of the restaurant? I haven't been there before.

I've just got a **message** from Andy. He wants to know if we're going to the party.

You can **download an app** with a dictionary to help you when you write in English.

While she was on holiday, Kelly **called** her family every day.



selfie

## C Expressions

**Amy** Can you read that message on my phone, please? My hands are wet.

**Claire** It's **locked**. What's the **PIN**?

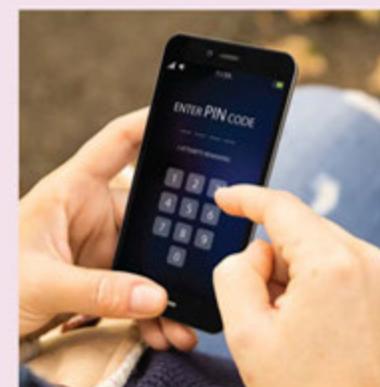
**Amy** You don't need a PIN to **unlock** it. Just **swipe** the screen left to right.



swipe



save



PIN



delete

**Tim** I can't **save** any new photos.

**Emily** Your phone **memory** is full. You need to **delete** some photos and messages.

# Exercises

## 17.1 Match the things on your phone with what they do.

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 1 camera       | a stores the information you need to use your phone |
| 2 SIM card     | b covers the phone                                  |
| 3 screen       | c starts the phone                                  |
| 4 phone case   | d takes photos                                      |
| 5 power button | e shows pictures and words                          |

## 17.2 Choose the right words to complete these sentences.

- 1 Tanya has a new app / *battery* for texting on the Internet.
- 2 When your phone's battery is low, you need a *charger* / *camera*.
- 3 You can use my phone to *voicemail* / *call* Megan.
- 4 Danny's new phone has a great *screen* / *camera*. It takes amazing photos.
- 5 I bought a new *battery* / *SIM card* in France, so that it was cheaper to call and use the Internet.
- 6 I want to buy a new *phone case* / *app*. This one is old and dirty.

## 17.3 Complete these sentences with words from B.

- 1 Maria *texted* ..... me last night, but I didn't see her message until this morning.
- 2 Carlos ..... a lot of photos of his new dog and puts them on Facebook.
- 3 What was the last app that you ..... ?
- 4 Lucy ..... her sister. They talked about their holiday at the beach.
- 5 Victor ..... me a voicemail. He asked me to call him back.

## 17.4 Complete the conversation with words from C.

- DEEPA: Can I look at your photos from the concert?  
IREENA: Sure. Here's my phone. Let me just put in the PIN to <sup>1</sup> *unlock* ..... it.  
DEEPA: That's a great one! Do I <sup>2</sup> ..... right to see the next photo?  
IREENA: Yes, that's right.  
DEEPA: Did you delete the ones from the restaurant?  
IREENA: No, I <sup>3</sup> ..... them in a different folder. Here they are.

## 17.5 Over to you

### Answer these questions for yourself.

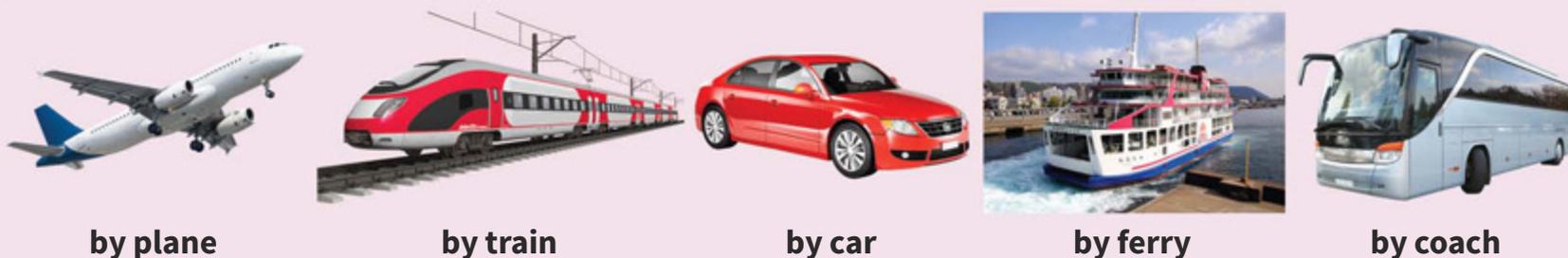
- 1 Do you use a PIN to lock your phone?
- 2 Do you have a phone case? What does it look like?
- 3 What apps do you use most often?
- 4 Do you save all the photos you take, or do you delete some of them?
- 5 Have you taken a selfie recently?
- 6 Do you prefer to call or text people? Why?

**A Holiday (noun)**

We **had a lovely holiday** in Egypt in 2014.  
I'm not working next week. **I'm on holiday.**  
Are you **going on holiday** this summer?

**B Types of holidays**

We're going on a **package holiday** to Hong Kong. [**flights** and hotel are included]  
We're going to have a **winter holiday** this year.  
I want to go **camping** this year. [sleep in a tent]  
I'm going on a **walking holiday** in the Alps.  
A **coach tour** is an easy way to go on holiday. [travelling in a comfortable bus]

**C Transport**

by plane

by train

by car

by ferry

by coach

**D Don't forget to take ...**

your **passport** (if you are going to another country)  
a **visa** [a stamp that you need in your passport to go to some countries]  
your **tickets**  
some **currency** [money of the country you are going to]  
a **camera**  
your **luggage** /'lʌɡɪdʒ/ (e.g. a **suitcase** or a **rucksack**)



passport

ticket

currency

camera

suitcase

rucksack

**E Expressions**

**A** Are you **flying** to France from England?

**B** No, we're going **by ferry**.

**A** What are you going to do in Madrid?

**B** We want to **try the local food** and **enjoy the nightlife** [clubs, etc.].

**A** **Have a great time!** And **send me a postcard!**

(See **Unit 32: Travelling** and **Unit 49: Moving** for more words about travel.)

# Exercises

## 18.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 A: Are you working on Monday? B: No, I'm *on* holiday.  
 2 A: Are you ..... on holiday this year? B: Yes, I'm going camping.  
 3 A: Did you have a good ..... in Greece? B: Yes, it was wonderful.  
 4 A: Are you flying to Italy? B: No, I'm going ..... train.  
 5 A: I'm going to New York next week. B: Great! Please ..... me a postcard.

## 18.2 What type of holiday is each person talking about?

- 1 It was fun but the tent was very small. *camping*.....  
 2 Everything was included - hotels and flights. ....  
 3 We were on the coach for seven days. I was very tired. ....  
 4 We walked about 20 kilometres every day. ....  
 5 We went to Switzerland in December. There was a lot of snow. ....

## 18.3 Look at the different ways of travelling. Put one tick (✓) for sometimes true, two ticks for often true and three ticks for always true.

	you can take a lot of luggage	very fast	cheap	you see a lot as you travel	relaxing
ferry					
car	✓✓✓				
plane					

## 18.4 Write the names of these things you need for a holiday.

-  1 *currency*.....
  3 .....
  5 .....  
 2 .....
  4 .....
  6 .....

## 18.5 What do we call:

- 1 something you take photos with? a c *amera*.....  
 2 a special stamp in your passport to enter a country? a v .....  
 3 something you fly in? a p .....  
 4 something that you carry things on your back in? a r .....  
 5 what people carry their clothes in when they go on holiday? a s .....

## 18.6 Fill the gaps in this email.

I'm having a great<sup>1</sup> *time* here in Spain. The<sup>2</sup> ..... is great - the clubs are open all night. The<sup>3</sup> ..... food is very good - lots of sh and salads. Please send me a<sup>4</sup> ..... from your holiday in Italy.

Love  
Alex

## A

## Kinds of shops



\* These words are also for people's jobs. We often add 's and say: I'm going to the newsagent's to get a paper. Do you want anything from the butcher's?

## B

## In the department store

A department store is a large shop which sells a lot of different things - clothes, beauty products, toys, etc.

Fourth floor

Third floor

Second floor

First floor

Ground Floor

Basement

Toys

Restaurant

Furniture

Men's Wear

Children's Department

Women's Wear

Beauty

Electricals

Food

## C

## Signs in shops



## D

## Expressions

**Shop assistant** Can I help you?

**Customer** Can I **try this shirt on?** (*goes and tries it on*) Have you got a **bigger / smaller size / a different colour?**

**Shop assistant** No, I'm sorry. That's the only one.

**Customer** OK. I'll take it. How much does it **cost?**

**Shop assistant** £22.

**Customer** Can I **pay** by **cheque?**

**Shop assistant** No, **credit card**, debit card or **cash**, please.

**Customer** Sorry, I only have a £50 **note**. I don't have any **change** [coins or smaller notes].

**Shop assistant** That's OK. Here's your **receipt**. Would you like a (**carrier**) **bag?**

# Exercises

## 19.1 Match the item with the shop.

toy shop   butcher   chemist   baker   gift shop   newsagent

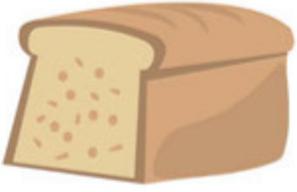
1  aspirin

2  beach ball

3  sausages

4  greeting cards

5  souvenir T-shirt

6  bread

## 19.2 Where do you need to go?

- I want to get a newspaper. *the newsagent*
- I'd like to buy food for a week.
- I need some stamps.
- We must get Michael a present.
- I'd like to buy a book.
- I want to buy some clothes for myself and my children in one shop.

## 19.3 Look at the department store plan in B opposite. Which floor will you go to buy:

- |                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 an armchair? <i>third floor</i> | 6 some baby clothes? ..... |
| 2 lipstick? .....                 | 7 a tie? .....             |
| 3 a cup of tea? .....             | 8 a TV? .....              |
| 4 a packet of tea? .....          | 9 a bed? .....             |
| 5 a skirt? .....                  | 10 a doll? .....           |

## 19.4 Write the words for these definitions.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 a person who sells things in a shop <i>shop assistant</i> | 4 'plastic money'      |
| 2 money (not a cheque or credit/debit card)                 | 5 coins or small notes |
| 3 a piece of paper that is worth £20                        |                        |

### Now write definitions in English for these words/phrases.

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 6 a butcher's     | 8 a newsagent's |
| 7 the first floor | 9 the basement  |

## 19.5 Which sign tells you ...

- that you can give the money for the things you are buying here? *Cash desk*
- that you can't go into the shop?
- that the door will open towards you?
- that the door will open away from you?
- that you can go into the shop?



## 19.6 Fill the gaps in the dialogue.

- CUSTOMER: How much does this jacket <sup>1</sup> .....
- SHOP ASSISTANT: £50.
- CUSTOMER: I'll take it, please. Can I <sup>2</sup> ..... by credit card?
- SHOP ASSISTANT: Certainly. I'll put your receipt in the <sup>3</sup> .....

## A

## Buying something

WOMEN MEN CHILDREN SALE Your basket (0)

Search products

**SHOP BY PRODUCT**

- T-shirts and tops
- Jumpers
- Trousers and jeans
- Shoes and boots
- Jackets and coats

**Cotton T-shirt**

**Colour:** White  Blue  Red

**Size:** Small  Medium  Large

**Price:** £6.99

**Delivery options:**

Free Delivery (3-5 days)

**Next Day Delivery** (delivery on 16 November) £5.99

**Add to basket**

Today's Date: 15 November

★ ★ ★ ★ ☆  
Read the **reviews**

## B

## Your order

**Delete this item**

**Your Order**

**Order Number:** 5624890

Items: 2 T-shirts

Size: Small

Colour: White

Total: £13.98

Free delivery (3-5 days)

**Delivery Address**

Name : Bernard Taylor

House number : 145

Street : Shaftesbury Road

City : Cambridge

Post code : CB2 8RU

Country : UK

Phone number : 01223 238331

Email : btaylor@inuse.com

**CHECKOUT**

## Language help

A **post code** (**zip code** in the US) is a long number at the end of an address. In the UK, it also contains letters (e.g. BA1 1LZ). A US zip code looks like this: 10509.



## C

## Expressions

- 1 Lisa likes to **shop online** because it's quick and easy.
- 2 Most people pay for their online shopping with **credit cards**.
- 3 Reading **online reviews** can help you choose what to buy.
- 4 If you are not at home to receive the **delivery**, we will take it to the post office.

# Exercises

## 20.1 Match the words from A and B with the examples on the right.

- |                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1 size             | a MR12 6QA             |
| 2 price            | b MasterCard           |
| 3 delivery address | c 8167990012           |
| 4 post code        | d small                |
| 5 credit card      | e £12.89               |
| 6 order number     | f 7 Park Lane, Bristol |

## 20.2 Choose the right word to complete these sentences.

- 1 When you shop online, you can search for / *collect* the best price.
- 2 You can read *sizes* / *reviews* from other people who bought the same thing.
- 3 If you want to buy something, *add* / *deliver* it to your basket.
- 4 If you don't want to buy something that is in your basket, you can *delete* / *order* it.
- 5 Don't forget to check how much you will pay for *delivery* / *order number*.
- 6 You can use your *credit card* / *post code* to pay for your shopping.

## 20.3 Complete the dialogue with the words below.

next day    post code    delivery    order number

- TOM: I'm waiting for a <sup>1</sup> *delivery* ..... of a pair of shoes.  
CUSTOMER CARE: What's your <sup>2</sup> .....?  
TOM: It's G99215540000Z.  
CUSTOMER CARE: And what's your address and <sup>3</sup> .....?  
TOM: 31 Mill Road, WC2 5SN. I bought them yesterday and I paid £5 for <sup>4</sup> ..... delivery. Will they be here today?  
CUSTOMER CARE: I'm sorry. We're very busy. Your order will be delivered tomorrow.



## 20.4 Put these steps of buying a computer online in the correct order.

- 1 *F*    2 .....    3 .....    4 .....    5 .....    6 .....
- A Wait at home for the delivery
  - B Add the computer to your basket
  - C Choose next day delivery
  - D Pay with a credit card
  - E Search for a website which sells the computer you want
  - F Read online reviews and choose which computer you want to buy

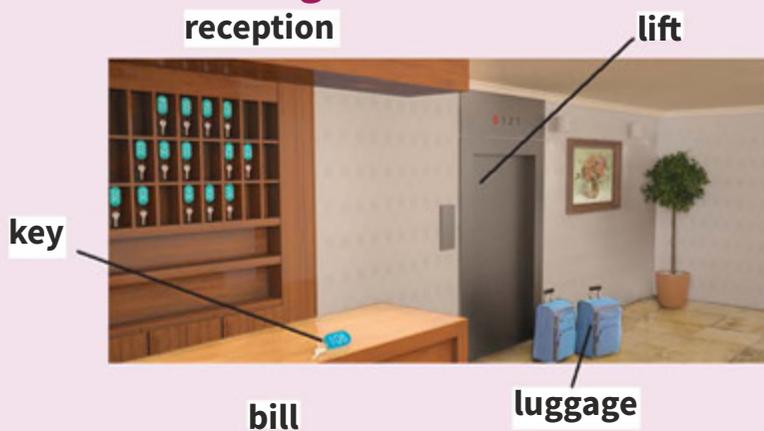
## 20.5 Over to you

### Answer these questions.

- 1 Do people often shop online in your country?
- 2 Have you ever bought things online? If yes, what did you buy?
- 3 Do you usually read the reviews before you buy something?

## A

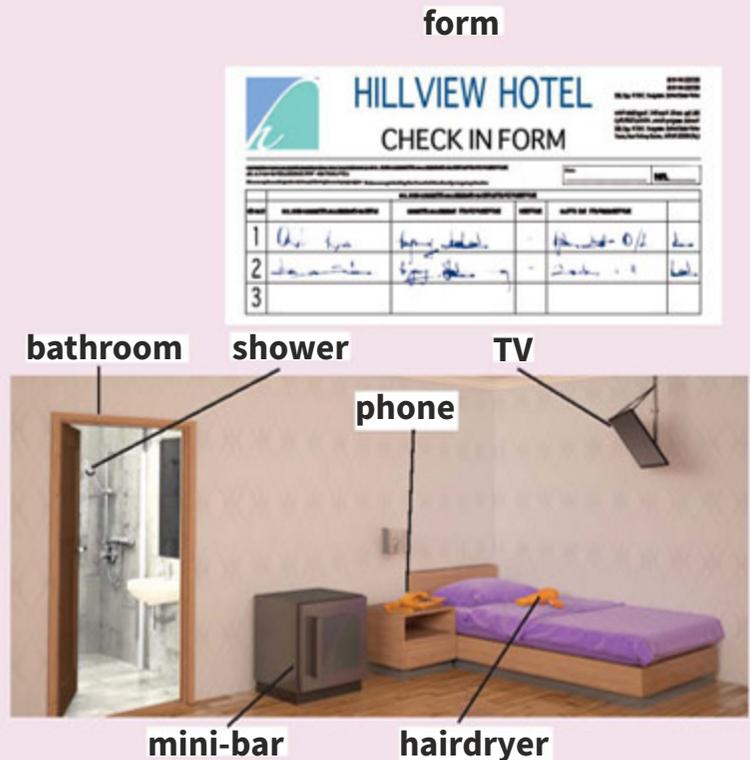
## Places and things in the hotel



HILLVIEW HOTEL  
BILL

Bill No. 01-1  
Name Mr. Ali  
Address ...  
Room No. ...  
Arrival ... AM/PM Date ... Departure ... AM/PM Date ...

ROOM SERVICE	30.00
INTERNATIONAL CALLS	40.00



## B

## Expressions in reception

Do you have a **single room** [for one person] / a **double room** [for two people]?

I have a **reservation**. [I booked a room] My name is ...

We'd like a **room with a view** of the sea.

The receptionist may say:

**Here is your key.**

Your room is **on the first floor**. **Take the lift**. It's **over there**.

Would you like **some help with your luggage**?

Can you **fill in this form**, please?

**Sign (your name) here**, please. [write your name]

Please **check your bill** [make sure it is correct].

When you leave you say:

Can I **check out**, please?

Can I have the **bill**, please?

## C

## Asking questions about hotel services

**How much is** a single room with a **bathroom**?

Can I order **room service**?

How do I **get an outside line**? (You want to phone someone who is not in the hotel.)

What is **the code for** Poland?

Can I **have breakfast in my room**, please?

Can I **have a wake-up call** at 6.30, please? (You want to wake up at 6.30.)

**What time is** breakfast / lunch / dinner?

Can I **(ex)change some money**, please?

# Exercises

## 21.1 Look at the pictures and complete the dialogue with words from the opposite page.

CUSTOMER: Can I have a  1 *double* ..... room for tonight, please?

RECEPTIONIST: Would you like a room with a  2 ..... ?

CUSTOMER: Yes, please. And with a  3 ..... , please.

RECEPTIONIST: All our rooms have a TV, a  4 ..... and a

 5 ..... I can give you room 25. It has a view of the

 6 ..... Here is your  7 ..... The

 8 ..... is over there. The room's on the second floor.

## 21.2 Match what you want on the left with what you need on the right.

You want:

- 1 to have a drink in your room
- 2 to go to the top floor
- 3 to open your door
- 4 to get up at 6 am
- 5 to phone your country
- 6 to watch the news
- 7 to wash your hair
- 8 to dry your hair

You need:

- a the lift
- b an outside line
- c a shower
- d a mini-bar
- e a hairdryer
- f a wake-up call
- g a TV
- h a key

## 21.3 Choose the right words to complete these sentences.

- 1 At reception / reservation you can order room / lift service.
- 2 We'd like a two / double room with a view / see of the garden, please.
- 3 The lift is after / over there. Take it to the second floor / room.
- 4 Please fill / write in this form / bill.
- 5 I'd like a sit-up / wake-up call at 7.30 and I'd like to make / have breakfast in my room, please.
- 6 I have a luggage / reservation for a single / one room with a bathroom.
- 7 Can I cash / have the bill, please? I'll check / change it now.
- 8 I'm leaving today. Can I exchange / order some dollars here before I pay / check out?

## 21.4 Write down questions that you can ask in a hotel beginning: Can I ... ? Use these words.

wake-up call *Can I have a wake-up call, please?*

breakfast in my room

bill

double room

luggage

## 21.5 Answer the questions.

- 1 How much does a hotel room cost in the capital of your country?
- 2 What is the code for Britain if you phone from your country?
- 3 What time is breakfast usually in a hotel in your country?
- 4 Is it most important for you to have a hairdryer, a TV or a mini-bar in a hotel room?

## A

## Places where you can eat

**café:** you can **have a cup of tea / coffee** and a **snack** there (e.g. a sandwich or a cake). They sometimes serve **meals** too (e.g. lunch, dinner).

**restaurant:** you go there for a meal; more expensive than a café.

**bar / pub:** bars and pubs serve **alcohol** and **soft drinks** [non-alcoholic drinks, e.g. fruit juice]; you can usually have a meal or a snack there too.

**fast food restaurant:** you can get a quick hot meal there, for example burger and chips.

**take-away:** you buy a snack or a meal there and take it home to eat.

## B

## In a restaurant



## Menu

## STARTERS

Soup of the day (v)  
Mixed salad (v)

## MAIN COURSES

Steak with chips or new potatoes  
Fish and chips  
Vegetable curry (v)  
Salmon fillet with green beans  
Burger with chips and mushrooms

## DESSERTS

Chocolate ice cream  
Apple pie  
Fruit salad

(v = vegetarian)

## C

## Expressions

**Waiter** Are you **ready to order**?

**Customer** Yes, **I'd like** the steak, please.

**Waiter** **Would you like** it with chips or new potatoes?

**Customer** With chips, please.

**Waiter** **How would you like** your steak - **rare, medium** or **well-done**?

**Customer** Well-done, please.

**Waiter** And **what would you like to drink**?

**Customer** **I'll have** a coke, please.

(later)

**Waiter** **Is everything all right**?

**Customer** Thank you, it's **delicious**. [very good]

(later)

**Customer** **Could I have the bill**, please?

**Waiter** Yes, of course.

# Exercises

## 22.1 Look at A opposite. Where would you go to ...

- 1 buy a meal and take it home to eat? *a take-away* .....
- 2 have a romantic dinner for two? .....
- 3 eat a quick lunch? .....
- 4 have a cake and a cup of coffee? .....
- 5 drink a glass of wine with friends? .....

## 22.2 Write down the name of a place of this type in your town.

- 1 fast food restaurant: *McDonald's* .....
- 2 café: .....
- 3 take-away: .....
- 4 restaurant: .....
- 5 bar: .....



## 22.3 Choose one of the words in the box which can go with each of the words in each group.

steak curry pie soup salad

- 1 You can have tomato / vegetable / chicken *soup* ..... as a starter.
- 2 I'd like the beef / chicken / vegetable ..... as a main course.
- 3 I'll have the mixed / tomato / fruit .....
- 4 Can I have the apple / chicken ....., please.
- 5 Do you like your ..... well-done, medium or rare?

## 22.4 Correct the six mistakes in this dialogue.

- WAITER: Are you ready ~~for~~ order? *to*
- CUSTOMER: Yes. I like vegetable soup and steak, please.
- WAITER: What would you like your steak? Rare, medium or done good?
- CUSTOMER: Rare, please.
- WAITER: What you would like to drink?
- CUSTOMER: A orange juice, please.

## 22.5 Cover the menu opposite. Write the food you can remember. Look at the menu again and check your answers.

## 22.6 Answer these questions.

- 1 What would you choose to eat from the menu opposite?
- 2 What can vegetarians eat from the menu?
- 3 Do you like eating out?
- 4 How often do you go to a restaurant?

### Over to you

Sometimes restaurants in other countries have English menus for tourists. Look at one of these. Write down any useful words you find.

## A

## Ball games

We **play** all these sports.



football



rugby



American football



basketball



badminton



baseball



tennis



volleyball



table tennis

## B

## Other popular sports



swimming

running



sailing



motor racing



horse racing



judo / karate



snowboarding



skiing



kayaking

We can use **go** with all the sports listed in B, apart from judo and karate. I **go** running every day. I **went** skiing last year. We use **do** with judo and karate. She **does** judo. (See **Unit 39: Go / went / gone.**)

## C

## Where we do sports

We play tennis / badminton / volleyball / basketball on a **tennis / badminton / volleyball / basketball court**.

We play football / rugby on a **football / rugby pitch**.

We swim in a **swimming pool**.

Many towns have a **sports centre** - you can do lots of different sports there.

## D

## Expressions

**Do you do any sports?**

Yes, I **go** swimming / running / sailing / kayaking.

**Do you play** football / tennis / badminton?

I **play** tennis. Which sports do you play?

**What's your favourite sport?**

I **like** motor racing **best**.

# Exercises

## 23.1 Cover the opposite page. What are these sports?



1 *rugby* .....



3 .....



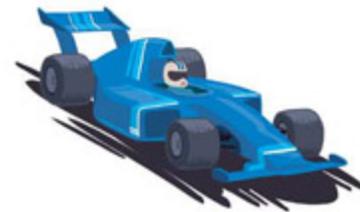
5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

## 23.2 Which sports use these things?



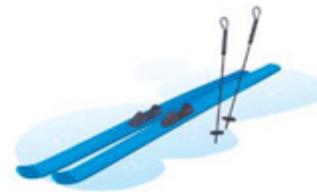
1 *kayaking* .....



3 .....



5 .....



7 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....



8 .....

## 23.3 Ask questions for these answers.

- 1 *Where do people play tennis?* .....  
On a tennis court.
- 2 Do you .....  
Yes, but only American football.
- 3 .....  
No, I don't do any at all. I prefer watching TV.
- 4 Do you .....  
Yes, I go to the swimming pool every Friday.
- 5 What .....  
I like running best.
- 6 Where .....  
On a rugby pitch.

## 23.4 Look at the different sports in this unit.

- 1 Write the names of the sports you have done.
- 2 Where did you do them?
- 3 Which ones do you like?
- 4 Which do you not like?
- 5 Which ones would you like to do?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### Over to you

Make a page in your vocabulary book for 'sports'. Look at the sports pages of an English-language newspaper. Write down the names of sports you do not know. Look them up in a dictionary.

## A

## Types of films



a western



a cartoon



a horror film



a comedy



a thriller



an action film



a science fiction film



a musical



a romantic comedy

## B

## People in films

Monica Bellucci is a **film star**.  
She was **in** the new James Bond film.

Daniel Radcliffe **played** Harry Potter in  
the Harry Potter films.

I like films by Italian **directors**.



## C

## Expressions

**A** Have you **seen** the latest James Bond film?

**B** Yes, I saw it **on TV**.

**A** Did you like the new Batman film?

**B** Yes, **I loved it / enjoyed it**.  
No, it was **boring**.

**A** Do you like **westerns**?

**B** No, I like **science fiction films** best.

**A** The best **action film** I've seen was Jason Bourne with Matt Damon.

**B** If I see a **horror film**, I can't sleep.

## Common mistakes

What's on at the cinema this week? [NOT ~~What's on the cinema this week?~~]

There's a comedy with Jennifer Aniston.

## Common mistakes

Do you go to the cinema often?  
[NOT ~~Do you go to cinema often?~~]

Yes, I go every week.  
No, I watch DVDs at home.

# Exercises

## 24.1 What types of films are these?

- 1 Some cowboys rob a train. *western*
- 2 A flying saucer lands from Mars.
- 3 A dead person comes back to life.
- 4 James Bond saves the world.
- 5 Mickey Mouse goes on a picnic.
- 6 A man falls in love with his teacher.
- 7 A dead body is found in the river.
- 8 There are lots of songs and dancing.

## 24.2 Write the name of a film of each type.

- 1 science fiction *Interstellar* .....
- 2 romantic comedy .....
- 3 thriller .....
- 4 western .....
- 5 musical .....
- 6 cartoon .....



## 24.3 Word puzzle. Can you make words for other types of films with the letters of ROMANTIC?

T H R I L L E R  
 O ..... R  
 C ..... M ..... Y  
 A ..... T ..... N  
 S ..... N C ..... F ..... N  
 W ..... T ..... N  
 M ..... I C ..... L  
 C A ..... O O .....

## 24.4 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 Do you prefer going *to the* ..... cinema or watching TV?
- 2 We ..... a DVD last night.
- 3 Who ..... James Bond in *Skyfall*?
- 4 Was Rachel Weisz ..... *The Constant Gardener*?
- 5 Lots of big ..... live in Hollywood.
- 6 Steven Spielberg is a famous American film .....

## 24.5 Answer these questions.

- 1 What is your favourite type of film?
- 2 Who is your favourite film star?
- 3 Do you prefer going to the cinema or watching DVDs?
- 4 What was the last film you saw?
- 5 How can you find out what is on at the cinema where you live or study?

## A

**TV, radio, music, film**

I **watch TV** every evening.

Did you **watch / see** the film about President Kennedy?

What **programmes** do you like best on TV and radio?

I like **watching** films on TV. (You can also say: I like to watch ...)

At the weekend, we usually **watch a DVD**.

I like **listening to** music on the radio. (You can also say: I like to listen ...)

I often **listen to** music on my phone when I'm relaxing.

I need some new **headphones** for my phone.



## B

**Hobbies**

A lot of young people **play video games** every day.

I **download** music and films from **the Internet**.

I **chat to my friends online** every evening.

I really like **cooking**.

Do you like **gardening**? /'gɑ:dniŋ/

We **grow flowers** and **vegetables** in our garden.



## C

**Reading**

I read a lot at home.

What do you read?

I read **novels** [long stories]. My sister likes **comics**.

I like **books about** nature and different countries.

I like **magazines about** music and sport.

Do you read a **newspaper** every day?



## D

**Expressions**

We sometimes **have friends round**

[we ask them to come to our house / flat].

I often **have friends to dinner**.

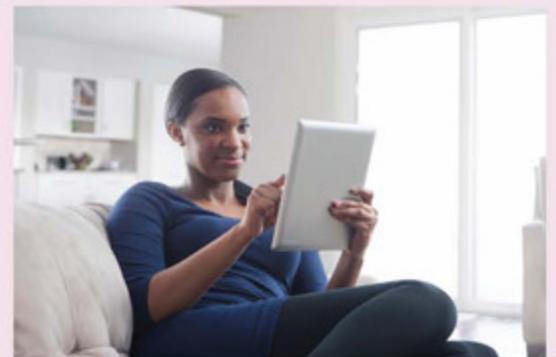
My best friend **comes to stay** sometimes.

[sleeps in my house / flat]

I **talk to** my friends **on the phone** every evening.

Sometimes, I just **do nothing**.

Grandpa likes to **have a sleep** after lunch.

**Common mistakes**

We watch TV [NOT see TV] and we listen to the radio [NOT hear or listen the radio].



# Exercises

## 25.1 What are these people doing?



1 She's *watching TV*.



3 He's ..... a



5 She's .....



2 He's .....



4 He's .....



6 He's .....  
to .....

## 25.2 Fill in the missing verbs.

- 1 I usually *listen* ..... to music on my laptop at home.
- 2 I like ..... magazines more than newspapers.
- 3 I ..... to my sister on the phone every Sunday.
- 4 A lot of people like to ..... a sleep after lunch.
- 5 Do you ever ..... friends to dinner?
- 6 The children ..... video games every evening.
- 7 I want to ..... some music from the Internet this evening.
- 8 Did you ..... the programme about Namibia yesterday?
- 9 My dad ..... vegetables in his garden.
- 10 Shall we ..... a DVD tonight?

## 25.3 Answer these questions.

- 1 When you have friends round, what do you like to do?
- 2 Who comes to stay at your house / flat?
- 3 What do you like to read most?
- 4 How often do you talk to your friends on the phone?
- 5 Do you have a garden? Do you like gardening?
- 6 How often do you chat to your friends online?
- 7 Do you often download music or films from the Internet?
- 8 What is your favourite video game?
- 9 When do you use headphones?

## 25.4 Interesting or boring? Number these activities from 5 (= very interesting) to 1 (= very boring).

gardening	cooking	reading	using the Internet	watching DVDs
listening to music	doing nothing	chatting online		

## A

**Music, musical and musician**

**Music** is an uncountable noun. We do not use it in the plural. The band played fantastic **music** for more than two hours [NOT fantastic musics].

**Musical** is an adjective.

There is a shop on King Street that sells **musical** instruments [NOT music instruments].

A **musician** (noun) is a person.

My brother is a very good **musician**. He plays three instruments.



## B

**Musical instruments**

piano



cello



guitar



flute



violin



trumpet



clarinet



drums

## C

**Playing musical instruments**

Ava **plays the clarinet**. Her brother **plays the drums**.

Krishnan **is learning the guitar**. His friend, Isabella, **has piano lessons**.

Mia is a very good **flute-player**. She **plays in an orchestra**. Her friend, Nuria, is a good **trumpet-player**.

Lucas is an excellent **violinist**. His sister is a good **pianist**.

Can you **play a musical instrument**?

## D

**Listening to music**

Charlotte **loves classical music**. (for example, Beethoven, Mozart) [NOT classic music]

Harper **can't stand opera** [dislikes it very much]. She prefers **pop** music.

I like **folk music, jazz** and **rock**.

I often **listen to music** on the train.

I **downloaded some new songs** yesterday. Do you want to hear them?

**Common mistakes**

A **band** means a group of musicians.

Nuala had a really good band at her 21st birthday party. [NOT 'a really good music band']

A **concert** means an event with music.

We're going to a concert tonight. [NOT 'a music concert']

# Exercises

## 26.1 Choose the correct word: *music*, *musical* or *musician*.

- 1 What are your favourite types of *music*.....?
- 2 My brother thinks he's a good ....., but he's very bad!
- 3 Can you play a ..... instrument?
- 4 I love different types of ....., for example, jazz, rock and classical.
- 5 Which ..... instrument would you like to learn?
- 6 Are there any ..... in your family?

## 26.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



Mason



Emily



Madison



Noah



Emma



Abigail



William



Ella

- 1 Madison plays the *violin*.....
- 2 ..... plays the cello in an .....
- 3 Noah loves playing the .....
- 4 Emily is having a ..... lesson.
- 5 Mason is a very good .....-player.
- 6 Ella plays the ..... every evening.
- 7 William ..... the .....
- 8 Emma is learning the ..... She will be a good flute- ..... one day.
- 9 ..... is a violinist.
- 10 ..... wants to be a pianist.

## 26.3 Choose the correct answer, a, b or c.

- 1 I love a) classic **b) classical** c) classist music. Beethoven is my favourite.
- 2 My brother a) can't stand b) can stand c) can't stay folk music but I love it.
- 3 I have some tickets for a) concert music b) music concert c) concert at the Town Hall.  
Would you like one?
- 4 I always a) listen in b) listen to c) listen music when I'm studying.
- 5 My sister plays in a) a) music band b) band music c) band with three other girls from her school.

## 26.4 Answer these questions.

- 1 How often do you download music?
- 2 Which musical instrument on the opposite page do you like best?
- 3 Can you play a musical instrument?
- 4 Which musical instrument would you like to learn?
- 5 Do you prefer classical music or pop music?

## A

## Continents and countries



continent	country	continent	country
North America	Canada the USA / the US	Australia	Australia New Zealand
South America	Argentina Brazil Chile Colombia Peru	Asia	China India Japan Pakistan Thailand
Europe	Germany Italy Poland Spain the UK	Africa	Egypt Morocco South Africa Tunisia
		Antarctica	

It is not possible to show all the countries of the world on a small page. If your country is not included, check its English name with your teacher or on the Internet.

## Common mistakes

All the nouns and adjectives for continents, countries and nationalities always begin with a capital letter, for example Africa [NOT africa].

## B

## Nationalities

notes	adjective
most country adjectives end in <i>(i)an</i>	<b>American, Argentinian, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, Colombian, Egyptian, German, Indian, Italian, Moroccan, Peruvian, South African, Tunisian</b>
many country adjectives end in <i>ish</i>	<b>British, English, Finnish, Irish, Polish, Scottish, Spanish</b>
a few country adjectives end in <i>ese</i>	<b>Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese</b>
exceptions	<b>Pakistani, Thai, French</b>

## Tip

Remember that words for languages are often the same as the 'people' adjective, e.g. French, Spanish, Japanese and Thai. One exception is Arabic.

# Exercises

## 27.1 Which countries do these letters make?

- |          |              |            |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 1 HINAC  | <i>China</i> | 4 OCRMOOC  |
| 2 ZIRALB |              | 5 ANJAP    |
| 3 PINSA  |              | 6 DALTHINA |

## 27.2 Match these capital cities to their countries and make sentences.

- 1 Tokyo *Tokyo is the capital of Japan.*
- 2 Rome
- 3 Canberra
- 4 Bogotá
- 5 Cairo
- 6 London
- 7 Berlin
- 8 Warsaw
- 9 Buenos Aires
- 10 Madrid

Argentina	Australia	Colombia	
Egypt	Germany	Italy	Japan
Poland	Spain	the UK	

## 27.3 Which country is different? (Think of the languages they speak there.) Write sentences.

- 1 Australia, Canada, England, Iceland *In England, Canada and Australia they speak English but in Iceland they speak Icelandic.*
- 2 Brazil, Chile, Mexico, Spain
- 3 Austria, Germany, Italy, Switzerland
- 4 China, Egypt, Morocco, Saudi Arabia
- 5 Canada, France, Scotland, Switzerland

## 27.4 What is the adjective for these countries?

- |             |               |             |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1 Indian    | <i>Indian</i> | 6 Spain     |
| 2 Thailand  |               | 7 Peru      |
| 3 Germany   |               | 8 China     |
| 4 Egypt     |               | 9 Australia |
| 5 Argentina |               | 10 Poland   |

## 27.5 Write down:

- 1 the name of your country.
- 2 the names of the countries next to your country.
- 3 the name of your language.
- 4 the name for people from your country.



### Over to you

In which continents are these places? Use the Internet to help you.

- Mount Everest *Asia*
- The Sahara
- The Amazon
- Wagga Wagga
- The Volga
- Mount Kilimanjaro
- The Mississippi
- Mount Fuji
- Lake Titicaca

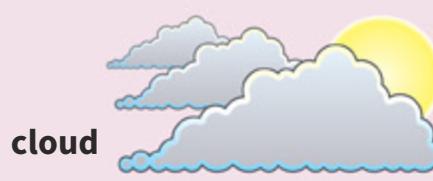
## A Types of weather



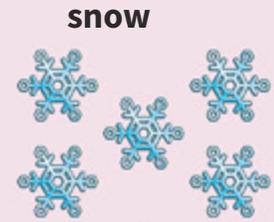
sun



rain



cloud



snow



fog



wind



thunder



lightning

## B Adjectives and verbs

noun	adjective
sun	sunny
rain	rainy
wind	windy
cloud	cloudy
snow	snowy
fog	foggy
thunder	thundery
lightning	-

## C Other useful weather words

It is very **hot** in Mexico - it is often **45 degrees** there in summer.

It is very **cold** in the Arctic - it is often **minus 50 degrees** there.

It can be very **wet** in London - carry an umbrella when you go sightseeing there.

It is very **dry** in the Sahara - it doesn't often rain there.

A **hurricane** is a very strong wind.

A **storm** is when there is a strong wind and rain together.

A **thunderstorm** is when there is thunder, lightning, rain and sometimes wind together.

## D Expressions

**It's a sunny day** in Tokyo today, but **it's cloudy** in Hong Kong.

**It's foggy** in Sydney and **it's snowing / it's snowy** in Moscow.

**It's raining** in Barcelona but **the sun is shining** in Granada.

It's a lovely day.

It's a horrible day, isn't it!

**What's the weather like in your country in June?**

It's usually warm and sunny.

## Common mistakes

We say **It's windy / cloudy / foggy / sunny** [NOT *It's winding / clouding / fogging / sunning*].

## Tip

Watch the weather forecast in English on TV or online as often as you can.

# Exercises

## 28.1 Match the words and the symbols.

1 snow    2 sun    3 rain    4 fog    5 lightning    6 wind    7 cloud

a     b     c     d 

e     f     g 

## 28.2 Look at the chart. Write sentences about the cities in the chart.

	Hanoi	1 It is <i>sunny in Hanoi.</i>
	Hong Kong	2 It is <i>raining in Hong Kong.</i>
	La Paz	3 It is .....
	Paris	4 It .....
	Tashkent	5 .....
	Seoul	6 .....
	Washington	7 .....

## 28.3 Complete these sentences with a word from the opposite page.

- The sun *shone* ..... every day last month.
- When it ....., I take my umbrella.
- What's the ..... like in your country in January?
- When it ....., we can go skiing.
- You see ..... before you hear thunder.
- It is 24 ..... here today.
- It is dangerous to be in a small boat at sea in a .....
- It is very ..... in Siberia in winter.

## 28.4 Are these sentences true about the weather in your country? If not, correct them.

- It often snows in December. *It sometimes snows in December.*
- It is usually 40 degrees in summer and minus 20 degrees in winter.
- There are thunderstorms every day in August.
- It is very wet in spring.
- We never have hurricanes.
- Summer is usually hot and dry.

## 28.5 What do you like to do or not like to do in these types of weather?

- fog *I don't like to drive.*
- sunny weather
- a rainy day
- snow
- a windy day

## A

## Places in the town

**Train station / railway station** - you can **get a train** here.

**Bus station** - you can **get a bus** here.

**Shops** - you can buy things here. (See **Unit 19: Shops and shopping.**)

**Shopping centre** - area of town with a lot of shops.

**Tourist information office** - tourists can **get information** here.

**Museum** - you can see interesting old things here.

**Bank** - you can **change money** here or get money from a **cash machine**.

**Post office** - you can **post letters and parcels** here.

**Library** /'la br ri/ - you can **read books** and **newspapers** here.

**Town hall** - local government officers work here.

**Car park** - you can **park your car** here.

**Pedestrian area** /'e ri / - you can only walk here, you can't come here by car.

## B

## Notices in towns



## C

## Asking for and giving directions

**A:** Where is the bus station?

**B:** Go **left** here and it's **at the end of the road**.

**A:** How do I get to Market Street?

**B:** Take the **first right** and then the second left.

**A:** Is there a shopping centre near here?

**B:** Yes, **turn right** here. The entrance is on Market Street **on the left**.

**A:** Can I park here?

**B:** No, but **there's a car park** on Park Street.

**A:** Excuse me, I'm looking for the museum.

**B:** It's on Bridge Road. Take the **number 31 bus** and **get off at the second stop**.



**A:** Can you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please? I need a **cash machine**.

**B:** No problem. Go left here and there's one **on the other side of the road**.

# Exercises

## 29.1 Answer the questions.

- 1 Where can I get a bus to London? *at the bus station*
- 2 Where can I get information about hotels?
- 3 Where can I change money?
- 4 Where can I park my car?
- 5 Where can I see old and interesting things?
- 6 Where can I get a train?
- 7 Where can I go to a lot of different shops?
- 8 Where can I go to post a parcel?

## 29.2 Which notice from B opposite will help you?

- 1 The cash machine doesn't give you any money. *Out of order*
- 2 You are in the shopping centre and you want to leave.
- 3 You want to sit in a place where there are no cigarettes.
- 4 You want to know if people can go on the grass.
- 5 You want to go into the museum.

## 29.3 Complete these sentences.

- 1 Turn right at the *end* ..... of the road.
- 2 The bus ..... is over there ..... the left.
- 3 For the Town Hall ..... the number 14 bus.
- 4 ..... is a post office on the other ..... of the road.
- 5 You can find a cash ..... at the bank in High Street.
- 6 We can get a map of the town at the tourist ..... office.
- 7 Can you tell me the ..... to the railway ....., please?
- 8 ..... me. I'm looking ..... a car park.

## 29.4 What words are these?

- |                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 sumuem <i>museum</i> | 6 dtaeepsrin raae |
| 2 nowt hlal            | 7 scah enicmah    |
| 3 brilyra              | 8 tsop ffcoie     |
| 4 rac prak             | 9 phoss           |
| 5 ywrlaai nttoisa      | 10 sub post       |

## 29.5 Look at the map in C opposite. How do you get from the tourist information office to the shopping centre? Write directions.

## 29.6 Does your town have these places? Where are they? Write sentences.

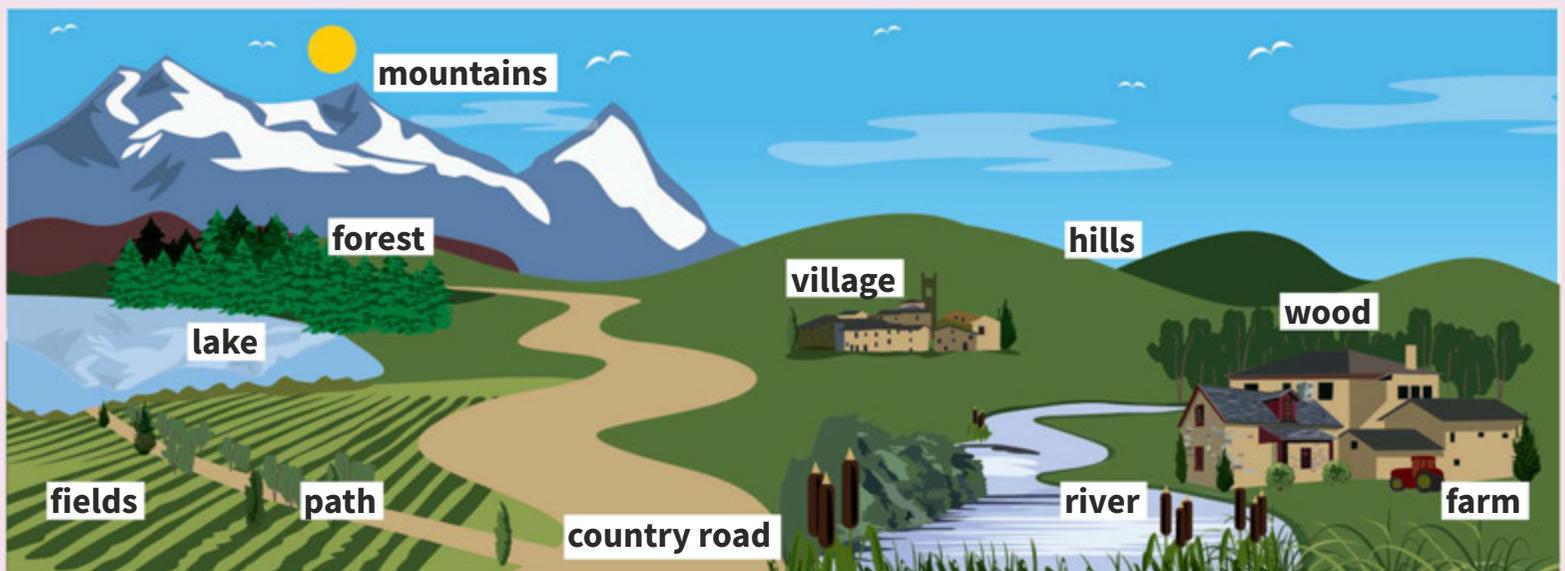
- |  |                                |                 |
|--|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 a train station <i>There's a train station. It's at the end of Station Road.</i> |                                |                 |
| 2 a bus station  | 5 a town hall                  | 8 a museum      |
| 3 a shopping centre  | 6 a pedestrian area            | 9 a post office |
| 4 a library  | 7 a tourist information office |                 |

### Tip

Keep a notebook in your pocket. Many towns in different countries have notices in English to help tourists. Write down any English words and expressions that you see in your town.

The **countryside** and the **country** both mean 'not the city'. **Country** can also mean a nation (e.g. France, China).

### A Things we can see in the countryside



### B Living and working in the countryside

In the countryside, people usually live in a **small town** (e.g. 6,000 people) or **village** /vɪlɪdʒ/ (e.g. 700 people).

A **farmer** lives **on a farm** and works in the fields.

My friend lives in a **cottage** /'kɒtɪdʒ/ [small house in a village or the countryside].

### C Nature /'neɪtʃə/ and conservation /kɒnsə'veɪʃən/

**Nature** means 'everything in the natural world'. (= animals, birds, plants, etc.)

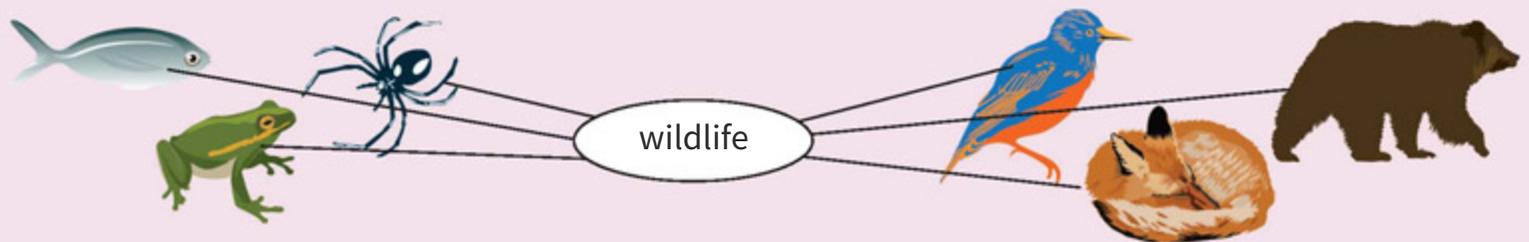
There is wonderful **wildlife** in the north of the country. [animals, birds, fish and insects]

Near the village there is a **conservation area** [place where wildlife and nature are protected].

#### Common mistakes

I love nature [NOT I love the nature]. I like walking in the countryside [NOT I like walking in the nature].  
'Nature' is not a place.

In the south of the country, there is a **national park** [very big national conservation area].



### D Things to do in the countryside

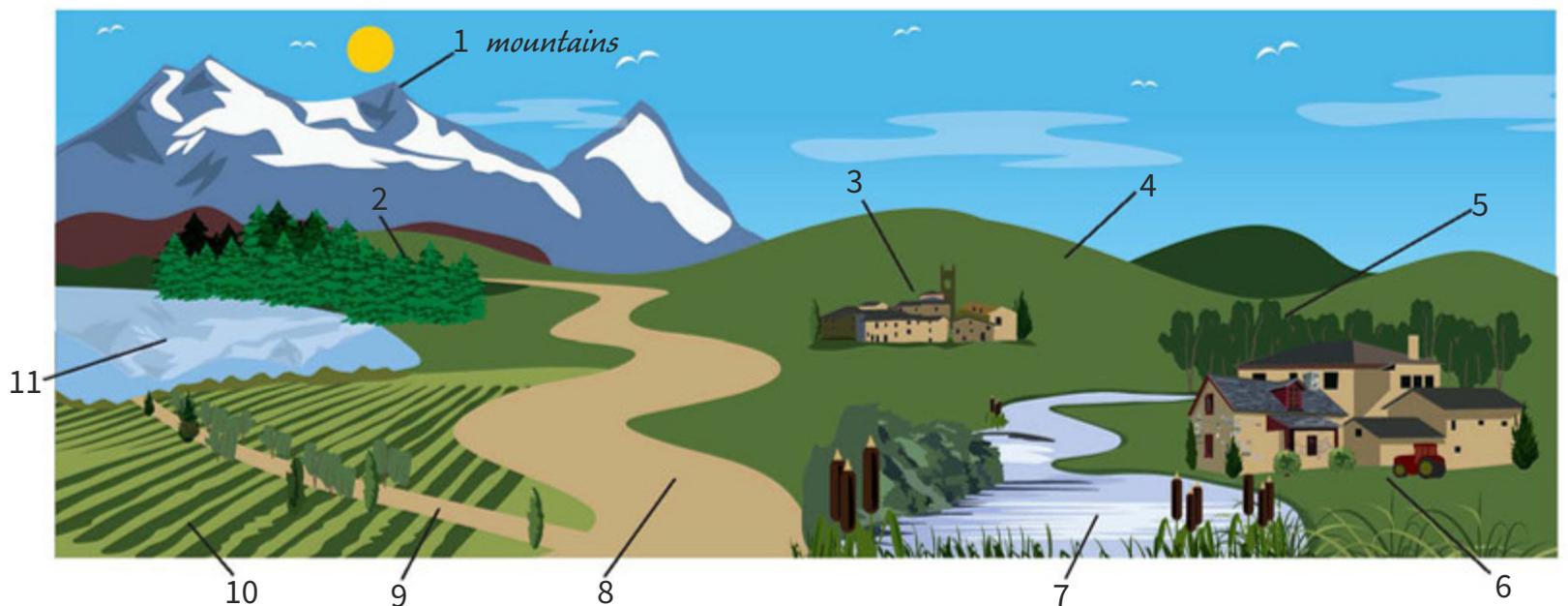
You can take food and drink and **have a picnic**.

You can **go walking** / **skiing** in the mountains.



# Exercises

**30.1** Cover the opposite page. How many names of things in the countryside can you remember?



**30.2** Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 My brother is a farmer. He lives on a *farm* .....
- 2 It's not a big house; it's just a .....
- 3 The farm is near a ..... which has 800 people.
- 4 Twenty kilometres from the village there is a small ..... It has 9,000 people.

**30.3** Match the beginning of the sentences on the left with the ends of the sentences on the right.

- |                                  |   |                                    |
|----------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| 1 We went swimming               | → | a sitting by the river.            |
| 2 We went walking                | → | b in the national park.            |
| 3 We went skiing                 | → | c in the lake. The water was warm. |
| 4 We saw some wonderful wildlife | → | d along a five-kilometre path.     |
| 5 We had a picnic                | → | e down the mountain.               |

**30.4** Put *the* in the sentences if necessary.

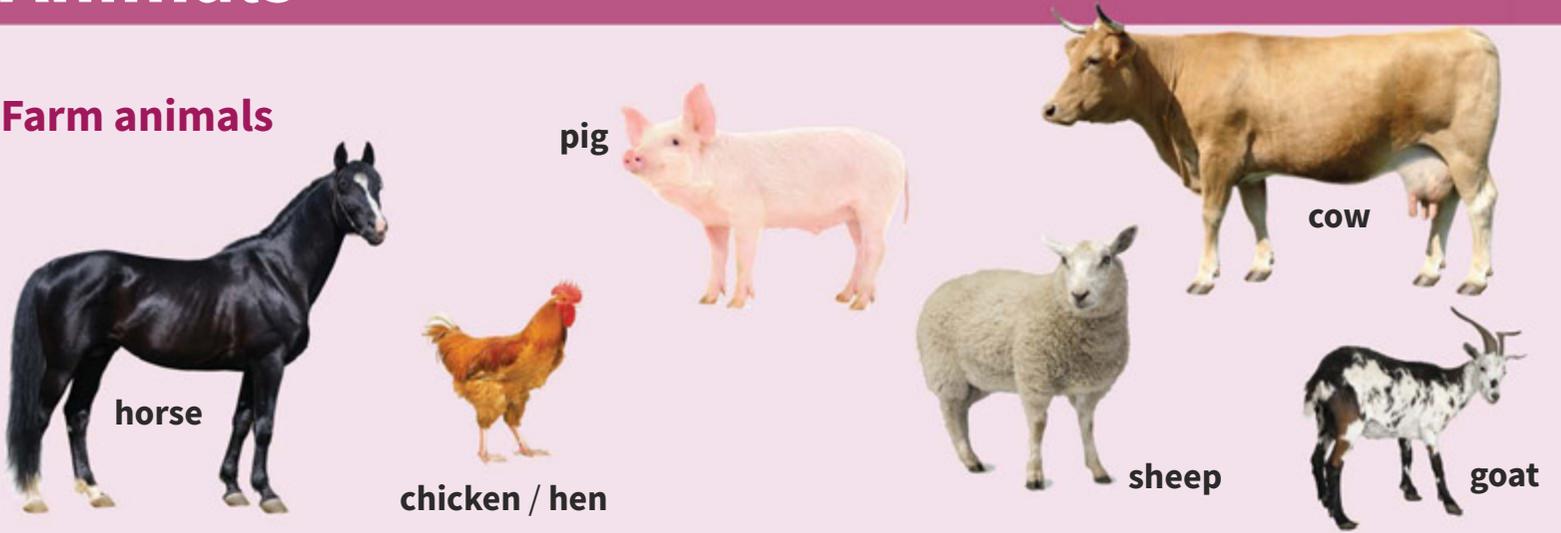
- 1 My parents live in *the* ..... countryside.
- 2 He loves ..... nature.
- 3 She wants to live in ..... country.
- 4 They are interested in ..... wildlife.

**30.5** Describe the typical countryside where you come from. Write eight sentences about it. Use these questions to help you.

- 1 Are there any woods or forests? *There are some big forests.*
- 2 Are there any hills or mountains?
- 3 Are there any lakes or rivers?
- 4 Are there many villages or small towns?
- 5 Are there farms?
- 6 Are there paths where you can walk?
- 7 Can you go skiing?
- 8 Can you see wildlife?

## A

### Farm animals



animal	produce	baby
horse	hair, meat	foal
cow	milk, leather, meat (beef)	calf
sheep	wool, meat (lamb)	lamb
pig	meat (pork, bacon, ham)	piglet
chicken / hen	eggs, meat (chicken)	chick
goat	milk, meat	kid

## B

### Wild or zoo animals



## C

### Pets

These animals are often **pets**.



A parrot is a **bird**.

## D

### Expressions

Take your dog **for a walk** every day.

You must **feed your animals** and **give them water** every day.

**Do you have any pets?**

# Exercises

## 31.1 Complete these sentences.

- 1 A *tortoise*..... goes to sleep in winter.
- 2 A ..... has a very long neck.
- 3 ..... and ..... are birds.
- 4 ..... and ..... are large cats.
- 5 You can ride a ..... and an .....
- 6 ..... swim and ..... fly.
- 7 ..... are farm birds.
- 8 ..... are very good at hopping and jumping.
- 9 Don't forget to ..... the cat and to ..... it some water.
- 10 I ..... my dog for a walk every day before school.

## 31.2 Match the animal with its meat and with its baby.

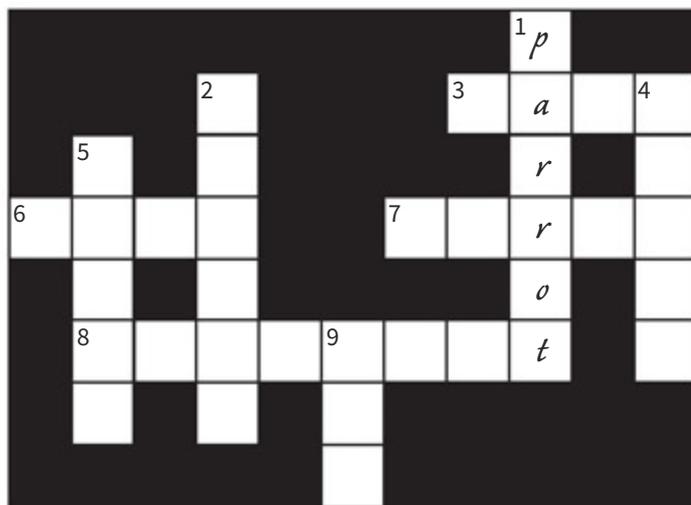
<i>animal</i>	<i>meat</i>	<i>baby</i>
goat	lamb	calf
sheep	chicken	piglet
cow	pork	lamb
hen	beef	kid
pig	goat	chick

*Note: Lines connect 'goat' to 'lamb' and 'kid', and 'pig' to 'pork' and 'chick'.*

## 31.3 Look at the animals opposite. Find three animals which:

- 1 eat meat. lions, .....
- 2 give us things that we wear. ....
- 3 produce their babies in eggs. ....
- 4 we can eat. ....

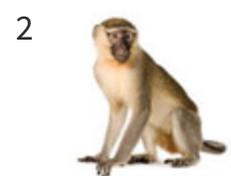
## 31.4 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.



### Across



### Down



## 31.5 There are 18 different animals in the pictures on the opposite page. Close the book. How many of these animals can you remember?

## A

## Types of transport



train



bus



bicycle / bike



taxi



(aero)plane



car



helicopter



motorbike / motorcycle



underground



boat



ship

## B

## Useful travel words



map



timetable



customs



luggage



passport

Can I have a **single** / **return** (ticket) to Barcelona, please?

(single = Madrid to Barcelona; return = Madrid to Barcelona and back to Madrid)

I'd like to **book** / **reserve a seat in advance** [to make sure you have a seat].

## Common mistakes

Was the journey long? [NOT Was the travel long?]

## C

## By train

The train **arriving at** platform 3 is the 16:50 train to Paris.

The Edinburgh train **departs** / **leaves from** platform 6. (*departs* is formal)

Is there a **restaurant car** on this train?

A: Do I have to **change trains** for Toulouse? [get off one train and get onto another]

B: No, it's a **direct** train.

## D

## By plane

You have to **check in** two hours before the plane **takes off** [leaves the ground].

**Online check-in** is also possible. / You can **check in online**.

Give your **boarding card** to the **flight attendant** when you get on the plane.

Have a good **flight**.

The plane **lands** in New York at 14:30.

After landing you have to **go through customs**.

## Common mistakes

I went through customs but nobody checked my passport [NOT controlled my passport].

## E

## By car

We **hired a car** for a week. We had to **fill it up with petrol**.

Can I **give** you a **lift**? I'm going into town.

(See **Unit 18: Holidays** and **Unit 49: Moving** for more useful words about travelling.)

# Exercises

## 32.1 Match the words on the left with their definitions on the right.

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1 land           | a a place to eat on a train                                    |
| 2 direct         | b bags and suitcases   |
| 3 restaurant car | c it says when trains depart and arrive                        |
| 4 ship           | d you do not have to change to a different plane / train / bus |
| 5 timetable      | e planes do this at airports                                   |
| 6 platform       | f it travels on water, e.g. the <i>Titanic</i>                 |
| 7 luggage        | g where you stand when you are waiting for a train             |

## 32.2 Are these sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- A single ticket takes you to a place and back again. *False. A return ticket takes you to a place and back again.*
- At customs, people check what you bring into the country.
- Planes land at the beginning of a journey.
- You need a boarding card to get off a plane.
- Hiring a car is the same as buying a car.
- If you give someone a lift they travel in your car.

## 32.3 Here are directions from the airport to John's house.

*When you arrive at the airport, take a number 10 bus to the station. Then take a train to Bigtown. The journey takes half an hour and you get off the train at the second stop. Take a taxi from the station to John's house.*

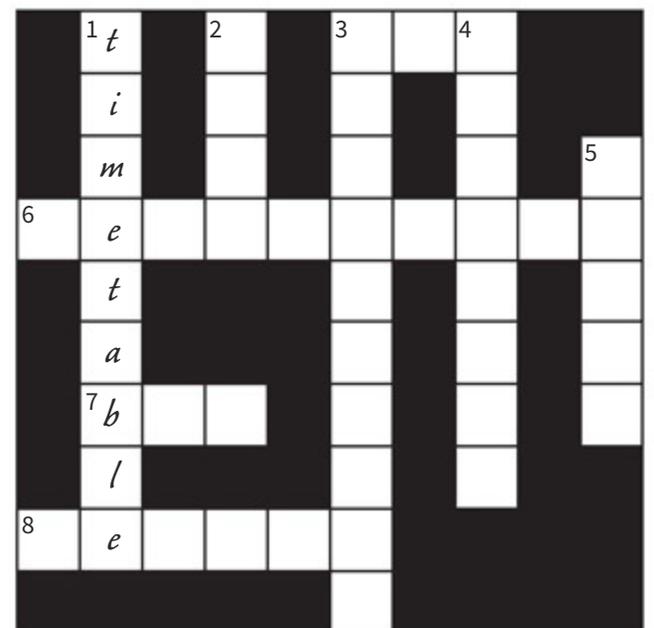
**Now write directions from the train station to your house.**

## 32.4 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.

### Across



### Down



### Over to you

Make cards to test yourself. Write the word on one side of the card and a picture (or a definition or translation) on the other side. Look at the pictures (or definitions or translations). Can you remember the English words?

## A

## Special days

festival	date	what people do
<b>Christmas</b>	25th December	send Christmas cards, give presents, spend time with their families, decorate a <b>Christmas tree</b> , eat a lot
<b>New Year's Eve / Hogmanay (Scotland)</b>	31st December	sing and dance, toast the New Year
<b>New Year's Day</b>	1st January	a <b>bank holiday</b> [day when most organisations are closed]
<b>Valentine's Day</b>	14th February	send cards to boyfriend / girlfriend / husband / wife
<b>Easter</b>	dates vary	give children <b>Easter eggs</b> [chocolate eggs]
<b>Halloween</b>	31st October	children dress up, children knock at doors and ask for sweets
<b>Bonfire Night</b>	5th November	have a <b>bonfire</b> and <b>fireworks</b>

## B

## Food

Traditional UK food is **fish and chips**  and **roast beef and roast potatoes** [cooked in the **oven**] with **Yorkshire pudding** [dish made of flour, milk and eggs]. 

**Chicken tikka masala** [a kind of **curry**] comes from India, but is very popular in the UK. 

## C

## Education

type of school	what it is
<b>nursery school</b>	for children aged 2-4
<b>primary school</b>	for children aged 5-11
<b>secondary school</b>	for children aged 12-18
<b>state school</b>	parents don't pay for children to go here
<b>private school</b>	parents pay for children to go here

## D

## Politics

The UK has a **royal family**, with a **king** or a **queen**.

Political decisions are made at the **Houses of Parliament**.

The **Prime Minister** is the political leader of the UK.



# Exercises

## 33.1 Which festivals do these pictures show?



1 *Halloween*



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....

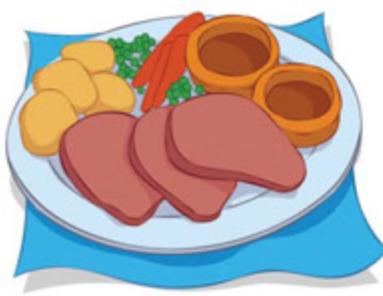


4 .....



6 .....

## 33.2 Look at the pictures. Find 10 more words connected with food in the puzzle.



C	H	I	C	K	E	N	F	D	K	N
R	Y	O	R	K	S	H	I	R	E	P
O	C	V	O	M	T	R	S	M	V	U
A	Q	E	W	A	A	T	H	X	L	D
S	M	V	C	S	H	G	E	Q	L	D
T	P	O	T	A	T	O	E	S	C	I
D	F	G	B	L	B	K	U	V	U	N
X	Z	O	E	A	P	I	V	Z	R	G
A	N	D	E	C	H	I	P	S	R	B
C	W	Q	F	T	I	K	K	A	Y	J

## 33.3 Answer these questions about traditional UK food.

- 1 What do British people traditionally eat with fish? *chips*
- 2 Where does chicken tikka masala come from?
- 3 What is chicken tikka masala a kind of?
- 4 Do British people eat Yorkshire pudding after their main course?
- 5 In or on which part of the cooker do you make roast beef and roast potatoes?

## 33.4 Which kind of school do these British children go to?

- 1 Lily is seven. Her parents pay for her to go to school. *a private primary school*
- 2 Gabriel is 14. His school is free.
- 3 James and Ellie are three.
- 4 Mehmet is ten. His parents don't pay for him to go to school.
- 5 Nick is 16. His parents pay for him to go to school.

## 33.5 Answer these questions about politics in the UK.

- 1 Who is Prime Minister at the moment?
- 2 Where does the Prime Minister work?
- 3 Who is head of the royal family at the moment?

### Tip

Learn about UK life by using the BBC Learning English website which has up-to-date articles and news stories: <http://www.bbc.co.uk/learningenglish/>

## A

## Crimes and criminals



<i>crime</i>	<b>robbery</b>	<b>murder</b> /'mɜːdə/	<b>burglary</b> /'bɜːgləri/	<b>mugging</b> [attacking a person in a public place and stealing their money]
<i>person</i>	<b>a robber</b>	<b>a murderer</b>	<b>a burglar</b>	<b>a mugger</b>
<i>verb</i>	<b>to rob</b> somebody or a place (e.g. a bank)	<b>to murder</b> somebody	<b>to break into</b> a house / flat (break / broke / broken)	<b>to mug</b> somebody



<i>crime</i>	<b>car theft</b>	<b>drug dealing</b>	<b>terrorism</b>	<b>shoplifting</b>
<i>person</i>	<b>a car thief</b> /θiːf/	<b>a drug dealer</b>	<b>a terrorist</b>	<b>a shoplifter</b>
<i>verb</i>	<b>to steal</b> a car (steal / stole / stolen)	<b>to sell drugs</b> (sell / sold / sold)	<b>to attack</b> somebody or a place	<b>to steal</b> things from a shop

There was a **burglary** at the school last night.

John West **murdered** his wife.

There are a lot of **muggings** in the city centre.

The bank **was robbed** yesterday. My sister **was robbed** last week.

## Common mistakes

A thief steals something (steal / stole / stolen).  
Somebody stole my bicycle. [NOT Somebody robbed my bicycle.]

I was robbed last night. [NOT I was stolen.]

## B

## The law /lɔː/

A student **was arrested for** shoplifting this morning.

**The police** came to the school and spoke to his teacher.

The student has to **go to court** next week.

If he is **guilty** he will have to **pay a fine**. /'ɡɪlti/

If he is **innocent** he can go home. /'ɪnəsənt/

I don't think he will **go to prison**.

## C

## Other crime problems

Some **vandals** broke the windows in the telephone box.

[A vandal breaks and smashes things.]

We have a lot of **vandalism** in my town.

A lot of people **take drugs** nowadays.

Is **football hooliganism** a problem in your country? /'huːlɪgənɪzəm/

[A **football hooligan** is a person who goes to a football match and makes trouble.]

# Exercises

## 34.1 What do we call someone ...

- 1 who steals cars? *a car thief*
- 2 who kills someone?
- 3 who steals things from shops?
- 4 who robs people's houses and flats?
- 5 who attacks someone in the street and steals their money?
- 6 who sells illegal drugs?

## 34.2 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 There were a lot of football hooligans near the stadium.
- 2 The police officer arrested her for shoplifting.
- 3 Some vandals destroyed all the flowers in the park.
- 4 He had to pay a fine of £50 for parking his car in the wrong place.
- 5 There are a lot of burglars in this part of the city, so always close the windows.
- 6 The police made a mistake; she was innocent. She did not steal the money.
- 7 A group of terrorists have attacked the airport.
- 8 He murdered his wife. He was in prison for 20 years.

## 34.3 True or false?

- 1 A burglar goes into someone's house and steals things. *True*
- 2 Vandals take people's money.
- 3 A murderer kills someone.
- 4 A car thief is someone who drives very badly or dangerously.
- 5 If you are guilty it means you are the person who did the crime.

## 34.4 Choose the right word to complete each sentence.

- 1 My brother was robbed / stolen yesterday.
- 2 Someone *robbed* / stole my bike last night.
- 3 My local bank has been *robbed* / stolen.
- 4 Who has *robbed* / stolen my pen?
- 5 Someone *robbed* / stole our TV when we were on holiday.
- 6 Where were you when your keys were *robbed* / stolen?

### Over to you

Give your opinion. What do you think should happen to these people?

- 1 A man murdered his wife and three children. *He should go to prison for 30 years.*
- 2 A student with no money stole a book from a bookshop.
- 3 A woman sold some drugs to a teenager.
- 4 Some terrorists attacked a bus and killed five people.
- 5 A woman parked her car and blocked the traffic.
- 6 A teenager damaged some trees in the park.

## A

**Radio and TV programmes**

The **news** is on TV at 6 o'clock every night. [important things that happen]

Do you watch **soaps** / **soap operas**? *Home and Away* is my favourite. [Soaps are stories about people's lives. They are often on TV every day.]

I like **nature programmes** best. [programmes about animals, birds, etc.]

I watched a **documentary** last night about drugs and crime. [programme looking at a social problem or question]

In **talk shows**, people talk about themselves or discuss topics with an interviewer.

The children watch **cartoons** on Saturday mornings. (For example, Disney films with animals that talk. See **Unit 24: Cinema**.)

My brother likes watching **reality TV** [programmes that film real people living their lives, not actors]. I always watch **sports programmes**.

## B

**Newspapers and magazines**

In most countries there are **morning (news)papers** and **evening (news)papers**.

Every month, I buy a **magazine**.

My mother buys **women's magazines**.

I like **news magazines** like *Newsweek* and *Time*.

In most magazines and newspapers there are lots of **adverts** / **advertisements** [something that tries to persuade people to buy something].



Other types of magazines: **sports magazines** / **computer magazines** / **teenage magazines**. (See **Unit 25: Free time at home**.)

## C

**People and the media**

There was **an interview with** the US President on TV last night.

The **reporters** are outside the film star's house.

[people who go out and get the news stories where they happen]

My sister is a **journalist**; she writes for *The Oxford Times* newspaper. [person who writes articles]



## D

**Expressions**

You can **read newspapers** or **watch TV online**.

What's your **favourite TV programme**?

**What's on TV** tonight?

Is it OK if I **change the channel**?

**Common mistakes**

The news is on now. [NOT The news are on now.]

# Exercises

## 35.1 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 Ten million people watch this *programme* ..... every week. It's very popular.
- 2 The news ..... on channel 3 at 9 o'clock every night.
- 3 There was a ..... about traffic problems in cities on TV last night.
- 4 I saw a ..... programme about birds in Antarctica.
- 5 My sister is 13; she reads a ..... magazine every week. She likes the stories about boys.
- 6 With my mobile I can read the sports news .....
- 7 I'd like to watch the news now. Is it OK if I ..... the channel?
- 8 Did you see the ..... with the Prime Minister last night?

## 35.2 Match the left-hand column with the type of programme on the right.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 Talking about family problems                                       | a International news   |
| 2 Film of elephants in Africa   | b Sports programme     |
| 3 Football cup final  | c Reality TV programme |
| 4 Reports from all over the world                                     | d Soap (opera)         |
| 5 Maria decides not to marry Philip                                   | e Nature programme     |
| 6 Ten people in a house - they cannot leave or talk to anyone outside | f Talk show            |

## 35.3 What do you call ...

- 1 a person who goes out and gets stories for newspapers? *a reporter*
- 2 a person who writes articles in newspapers and magazines?
- 3 a newspaper you can buy every day after about 5 pm?
- 4 a programme with stories made from lots of pictures?
- 5 a programme on TV about animals, birds, etc?
- 6 something in a magazine or on TV that tries to sell something?
- 7 something like CNN or Sky Sports?
- 8 a meeting when a reporter asks a person questions for TV or a newspaper?

## 35.4 Answer these questions for yourself.

- 1 Do you read a morning or an evening newspaper?
- 2 Do you read newspapers online?
- 3 What kinds of magazine do you read?
- 4 What will you watch on TV tonight?
- 5 What is your favourite TV channel?
- 6 How many hours of TV do you watch every day?
- 7 What are your favourite kinds of TV programmes?
- 8 Do you ever watch TV online?
- 9 Do you like watching adverts on TV?

### Over to you

Go to [www.bbc.co.uk/learningenglish](http://www.bbc.co.uk/learningenglish) Listen to programmes and download podcasts that interest you.

## A

### At home

The TV **isn't working**. Can you **repair** it?



The plants **are dying**.  
Did you forget to **water** them?



The washing machine is **broken**. We need to **mend** it.



The room is **untidy**. We must **tidy** it.



I've **lost** my keys. Will you help me **look for** them?



You've **cut** your finger.  
You should **put on a plaster**.

You've **had a row /ra / with** a friend. Will you **apologise** [say 'I'm sorry']?

## B

### At work

Chloe **had a bad day** at work yesterday. She was **late for** work.

She had **too much work** to do.



Her colleague was **in a bad mood**.

Her **computer crashed**.



The photocopier was **out of order**.



The coffee machine **wasn't working**.



### Tip

When you need to make a list of things to do, make it in English, e.g.

*Mend my bike      Water the plants*

*Tidy my desk*

# Exercises

## 36.1 Look at the pictures. What is the problem?



- 1 *The phone isn't working* .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....

## 36.2 Write down three nouns that can go with these words:

- 1 broken *window / cup / glass* .....
- 2 cut .....
- 3 untidy .....
- 4 late for .....
- 5 a ..... that isn't working
- 6 too much .....

## 36.3 Have you ever had these problems? Number each one 0-3 (0 = never, 1 = once or twice, 2 = quite often, 3 = frequently).

- |                                       |   |                            |
|---------------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 1 a TV that doesn't work              | 2 | 7 a broken washing machine |
| 2 dying plants                        |   | 8 an untidy bedroom        |
| 3 a cut finger                        |   | 9 a row with a friend      |
| 4 being late for work or school       |   | 10 your computer crashes   |
| 5 a colleague or friend in a bad mood |   | 11 lost keys               |
| 6 a coffee machine that isn't working |   | 12 too much work           |

## 36.4 Look at Chloe's problems in B. What could she do?

*She was late for work - get up earlier*

## 36.5 Can you think of four problems that you or a friend have had recently? Write them down in English. Use a dictionary to help you.

.....

.....

## A

**Natural disasters**

There was a **hurricane** / **snowstorm** / **forest fire** there last year.

**hurricane**: a very strong wind

**snowstorm**: a lot of snow and wind at the same time

**forest fire**: when it is very dry and trees catch fire



San Francisco has had a lot of **earthquakes** [when the earth moves].

There were serious **floods** in the north yesterday. [too much water]

The river often **floods** after heavy rain. [water goes over the river banks]

## B

**Man-made problems**

There are too many people in some places. Cities are too **crowded**.

Many people are:

**poor**: they do not have enough money

**hungry**: they do not have enough food

**homeless**: they do not have a place to live

**unemployed**: they do not have a job

There is a lot of **pollution** in many places. [when the air, water or earth is dirty and bad for people, plants and animals]

The river is **polluted** and a lot of fish have died.

The **air pollution** is very bad today.

The American **War** of Independence started in 1775 and ended in 1783. [fighting between two or more countries or nationalities] It lasted for eight years.

The teachers are **on strike** today. [when people refuse to work because, for example, they want more money]

He had a **car crash** on the way to work.

The **traffic jams** in the city are terrible in the **rush hour** [times when everyone is going to work].



# Exercises

## 37.1 What problems can you see in the pictures?



1 *strike* .....



4 .....



7 .....



2 .....



5 .....



8 .....



3 .....



6 .....



9 .....

## 37.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 air      | a fire      |
| 2 traffic  | b people    |
| 3 rush     | c pollution |
| 4 forest   | d quake     |
| 5 crowded  | e jam       |
| 6 homeless | f hour      |
| 7 car      | g cities    |
| 8 earth    | h crash     |

## 37.3 Find the words that match these definitions.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 a very strong wind <i>a hurricane</i>                | 5 without work                               |
| 2 so many cars on the road that they can't easily move | 6 the time of day when there is most traffic |
| 3 a street with a large number of people               | 7 without enough to eat                      |
| 4 when two cars hit one another                        | 8 when a lot of trees burn                   |

## 37.4 Look at the opposite page and find ...

- 1 two problems on the roads.
- 2 two things that pollute the air.
- 3 two problems that can be political.
- 4 three problems that are caused by the weather.
- 5 four adjectives that can describe people.

*traffic jam, car crash*  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

## 37.5 Fill the gaps with a word from the opposite page.

- 1 Cars make air *pollution* worse in towns.
- 2 Their wages were very low so the workers went on .....
- 3 My great-grandfather died in the First World .....
- 4 Jack had a ..... last year but fortunately no one was hurt.
- 5 Japan often has ..... and Siberia often has .....
- 6 When people are ..... they sometimes sleep on the streets.
- 7 I hate driving in the city in the .....
- 8 The water is so ..... that people cannot drink it.

### Tip

Try to listen to or watch the news in English every day. Make a note of new words about global problems that you find.

## A

**What can you have?**

You can ...

**have breakfast lunch dinner a meal**

**have a party a meeting a game** (of football, etc.)

**have a lesson an exam homework**

**have a cup of tea / coffee a drink an ice cream some cheese**

**have a shower /'ʃaʊə/ a bath a swim**



## B

**Expressions with have**

Is that your camera? Can I **have a look** [look at it]?

Is that your bicycle? Can I **have a go** [ride it]?

Goodbye! **Have a good journey** [somebody is going away]!

Do you **have a moment** [have some time]? Can I **have a word with you?** [speak to you]

We always **have a good time** in our English lessons.

[fun; we enjoy them]

I'm going to **have my hair cut**. See you later. Can you meet me at the hairdresser's?

I want to learn to ski but I **don't have the time**.



## C

**Have + got (speaking / informal) = have (writing / formal)**

I've **got** three sisters. **Have you got** any brothers and sisters?

My house is big. **It's got** five bedrooms and three bathrooms.

We've **got** ten minutes before the train goes.

**Have you got** a pen?

(in a shop) A: Do you sell postcards? B: Yes, but we **haven't got** any at the moment.

I've **got** a problem. Can I have a word with you?

I've **got a cold / a headache**. /'hedɪk/

## D

**Have got to (speaking / informal) = have to (writing / formal)**

We use **have (got) to** when the situation means you are obliged to do something.

The museum's not free. You **have to / you've got to** pay \$10 to go in.

All students **have to do** an exam.

My sister needs the car, so I've **got to** walk to school every day this week.

**Common mistakes**

In the past, we use **had to**, without 'got'. When I was a student, I **had to** write an essay every week [NOT I had ~~got~~ to write an essay].

**Tip**

Group expressions together which belong to the same topic, for example, **have + words for meals** (*breakfast, lunch, dinner*), **have + 'study' words** (*an exam, a test, a lesson, a class*), etc.

# Exercises

## 38.1 Fill the gaps in the sentences. Use words from A and B opposite.

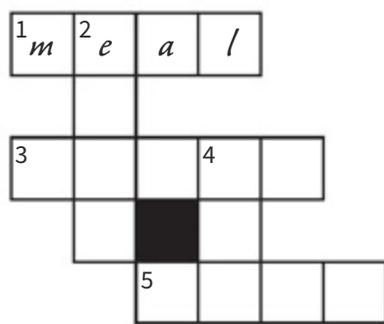
- 1 I always have *coffee* ..... in the morning.
- 2 I have a tennis ..... every Saturday morning. My teacher is excellent.
- 3 Do you want to have a game of ..... ?
- 4 Evelyn's having a ..... on Saturday. Are you going?
- 5 Do you want to have a ..... ? The bathroom's just here.
- 6 I have an ..... tomorrow, so I have to study tonight.
- 7 We must have a ..... to talk about these problems.
- 8 I'm going to the cafeteria to have a ..... . Do you want to come?
- 9 The hotel has a swimming pool, so we can have a ..... every day.
- 10 We can have ..... before the film, or we can eat after it.

## 38.2 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Please phone Grandma when you have ~~the~~ moment. *a*
- 2 Scarlett has gone to the hairdresser's to have cut her hair.
- 3 That computer game looks great. Can I have a going?
- 4 I want to have some words with my teacher after the lesson.
- 5 Mum didn't have the times to go to the shop today.
- 6 They don't have got any cake in the café today.



## 38.3 Complete the crossword.



### Across

- 1 You have it in a restaurant.
- 3 People often have one on their birthday.
- 5 Do you want to have a ..... of tennis?

### Down

- 2 You have it at school or university.
- 4 If you don't like coffee, you can have .....

## 38.4 What do you say?

- 1 (*someone is thirsty*) Why don't you have a *drink* ..... ?
- 2 (*someone is going away*) Bye! Have a ..... !
- 3 (*someone sneezes [Atishoo!] and has a red nose*) Oh! Have you got a ..... ?
- 4 (*someone has a new camera*) Is that new? Can I have a ..... ?

## 38.5 Answer the questions.

- 1 Have you got any brothers or sisters?
- 2 What time do you have English lessons?
- 3 What do you have for lunch?
- 4 Do you have to go to lessons every day?
- 5 How many pens have you got with you now?
- 6 Do you always have a good time in your English classes?

## A

**Go**

**Go** means to move from one place to another.

I **go** to work **by** bike. My brother **goes by** car.  
We **went** to Paris last summer.  
Is this train **going** to Granada?



Shall we **go** to the swimming pool today?

Where **does** this road **go**?



## B

**Go + prepositions**

Ethan **went in(to)** his room and shut the door.



Yuko **went out of** the house and **into** the garden.



Jacob was tired. He **went up** the stairs slowly.



The phone was ringing. She **went down** the stairs quickly.



## C

**Future plans**

**Be going to** is often used to talk about future plans.

Jan is **going to study** maths at university.  
We're **going to visit** my aunt in New York soon.  
I'm **going to learn** five new words every day.

## D

**Expressions Go + -ing for activities**

**Go** is often used with **-ing** for different activities.



I hate **going shopping**.



I usually **go swimming** in the morning.



Let's **go dancing**.



Do you like **going sightseeing** when you are on holiday?



Hans **goes skiing** every winter.



Carter is **going fishing** today.

**Common mistakes**

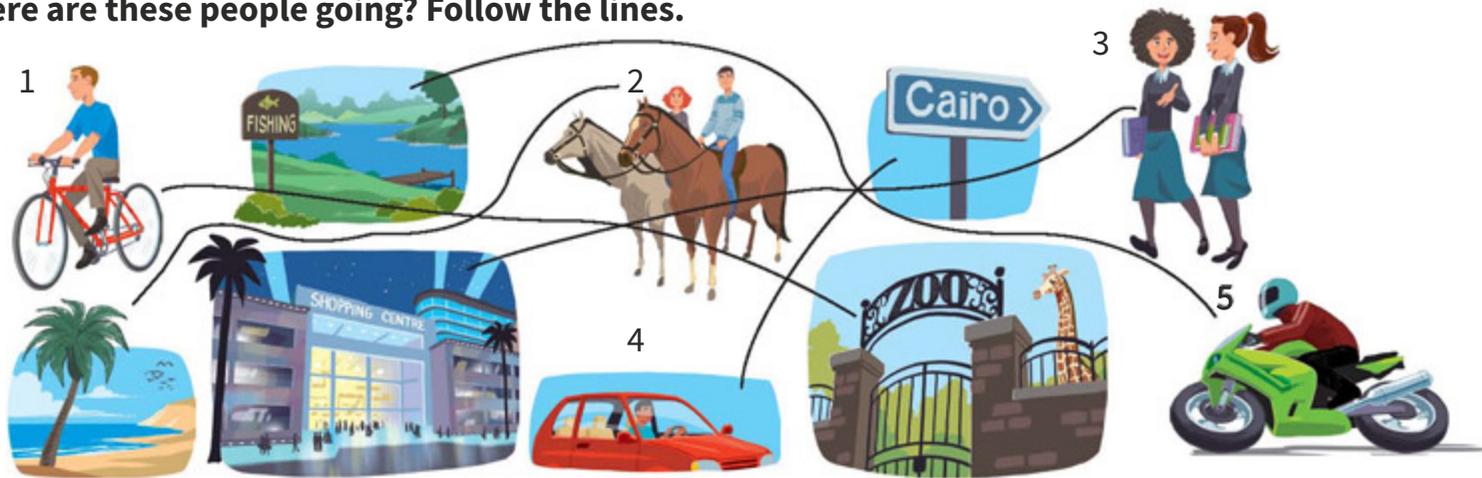
Let's **go swimming** and then **go shopping**. [NOT Let's ~~go to/for~~ swimming and then ~~go to/for~~ shopping.]

I **go there** every week. I don't want to **go anywhere / somewhere** else. [NOT I ~~go to~~ there every week. I don't want to ~~go to~~ anywhere/ ~~somewhere~~ else.]

I must **go home** at 10 o'clock. [NOT I must ~~go to/at~~ home at 10 o'clock.]

# Exercises

## 39.1 Where are these people going? Follow the lines.



- 1 Mateo *is going to the zoo.* .....
- 2 The Sharps .....
- 3 Zoe and Penelope .....
- 4 Asad .....
- 5 Lars .....

## 39.2 Write about Victoria's New Year Resolutions.

This year I'm going to:

- stop eating chocolate
- pass my driving test
- learn Spanish
- watch less TV
- keep my room tidy

- 1 This year *Victoria is going to stop eating chocolate.* .....
- 2 This year .....
- 3 This year .....
- 4 This year .....
- 5 This year .....

## 39.3 Look at the activities in D opposite. Which do you do on holiday? Write sentences.

*I usually go shopping on holiday.*

## 39.4 Where do trains, buses and roads go to from your town?

*From Cambridge, trains go to London and to Norwich.*

## 39.5 Are these sentences correct? If not, correct them.

- 1 It's time to go at home now.  
*X It's time to go home now.*
- 2 Mum is going for shopping this afternoon.
- 3 I'm going to London by car tomorrow.
- 4 I love Paris. Did you go to there last year?
- 5 Alexei is going to home at 4 o'clock.
- 6 We always go to the same café. Let's go to somewhere different today.
- 7 Excuse me, please. Where does this bus go?
- 8 I go to swimming every Sunday morning.
- 9 We're going sightsee today.
- 10 Jo went down to the top of the hill.
- 11 Let's go to fish today.
- 12 She went out off the shop.
- 13 Please go away. I'm tired.
- 14 Would you like to go to home now?

Over to you

Look in an English magazine or newspaper. Find five examples of *go*. Write them down in your vocabulary notebook.

## A

**Do as auxiliary**

questions

**Do** you like tennis?**Did** they like the film?

short answers

Yes, I **do**.Yes, they **did**.So **does** Matteo.So **did** I.

negatives

He **doesn't** play well.Leo **didn't** see it.

## B

**What are you doing?****Do** as a general verb:

On Saturdays I

usually **do** nothing.

I just relax.

**Don't do** that, Tommy.What **are** the people in the picture **doing**?

They're dancing.

## C

**What do you do?**A: What **do** you **do**? [What is your job?]

B: I'm a student. / I'm a hairdresser.

A: What **does** your wife **do**? [What's your wife's job?]

B: She's a doctor. / She's a teacher.

(See **Unit 14: Jobs**.)

## D

**Do + activity****do** the housework**do** the gardening**do** the washing**do** the washing-up**do** your homework**do** some exercises**do** business with**do** your bestA: Did you **do the washing** this morning?B: No, I'm going to **do** it later.Our company **does a lot of business with** the US.The homework is very difficult - just **do your best**.

## Tip

Make a note of any expressions with *do* that you find when you are reading in English.(See **Unit 41** for the contrast between *do* and *make*.)

# Exercises

## 40.1 Write questions and answers about the people in the picture.



- 1 (the boy) *What is the boy doing? He's eating an ice cream.* .....
- 2 (the girls) .....
- 3 (the dog) .....
- 4 (the man in the house) .....
- 5 (the woman) .....
- 6 (the man in the garden) .....

## 40.2 Write questions and answers about the jobs of the people in the pictures.

1 Lara Brown

2 Lee Atkins

3 Sophie Hicks

4 Cooper and Hailey



- 1 *What does Lara Brown do? She's a secretary.* .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

## 40.3 Write questions about what the people in Exercise 40.2 did this morning. Answer the questions using the correct form of the phrases in the box.

talk to five patients    teach three lessons    write an essay    go to a meeting

- 1 *What did Lee Atkins do? He taught three lessons.* .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

## 40.4 Look at the *do* expressions in D. Write sentences using these activities.

*I do a lot of housework but I never do the gardening.*

## 40.5 Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.

- ANNA: Where did you went on your holidays? To Wales? *go*
- PAVEL: No, we don't go to Wales this year. We went to Scotland.
- ANNA: Do your grandmother lives in Scotland?
- PAVEL: No, she don't but my uncle do.

## A

## Make ...

Dad is **making** some coffee.Mum is **making** dinner.I'll **make** some tea / hot chocolate. /'tʃɒklət/I **make** breakfast / lunch / dinner every day.He's **making** a photocopy.She's **making** a film / video.

## B

## It makes me (feel) ...

Going by train always **makes me (feel)** tired.My friend called me stupid. It **made me (feel)** angry.That film **made me (feel)** sad.

## C

## Expressions

You use **make** NOT ~~do~~ in these expressions:I **made a mistake** in the exercise.I want to **make an appointment** with the doctor. [fix a time to see him/her]When I get up I **make my bed**.The children are **making a noise**.Yes, and they are **making a mess** in the living room!I love your new dress - you **made a good choice**.

## Common mistakes

You do homework [NOT ~~make homework~~]. You take or do an exam [NOT ~~make an exam~~].You take a photo [NOT ~~make a photo~~]. You do the washing [NOT ~~make the washing~~].

# Exercises

## 41.1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *make*.

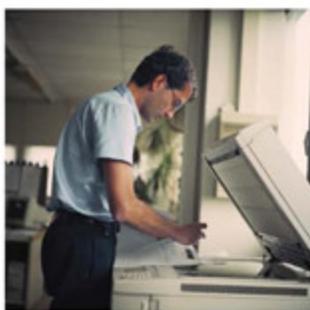
- I always *make* ..... a lot of mistakes when I speak English.
- Our neighbours had a party last night. They ..... a lot of noise.
- I am ..... dinner for my parents this evening.
- What do you think, the silver car or the white one? We must ..... our choice today.
- I ..... an appointment with the doctor for you. It's at 5 o'clock.
- Craig is in the kitchen. He is ..... a cup of tea.

## 41.2 Complete the sentences with *make(s)* / *made me feel* + an adjective from the box.

sick   tired   sad   happy   angry

- That film about the war *made me feel sad* .....
- Long lessons always .....
- She was horrible to me; it .....
- It's a lovely song. It .....
- That meal was horrible. It .....

## 41.3 What are these people doing? Complete the sentences using *make*.



1 He's *making a photocopy* .....



3 The little boys are .....



5 The children are .....



2 She's .....



4 They're .....



6 She is .....

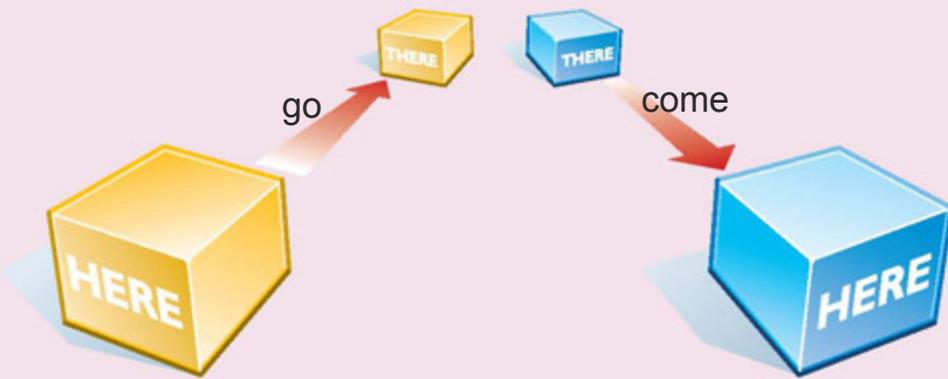
## 41.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- I have to ~~make~~ my homework. *I have to do my homework.*
- Can I ~~make~~ a photo of you?
- He's 25 but he never ~~makes~~ his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.
- Are you ~~making~~ an exam tomorrow?
- Have you ~~made~~ your homework yet?

### Over to you

Make a page for expressions with *make* and do in your vocabulary notebook. Make two columns - one with the heading *make* and the other with the heading *do*. Write down all the *make* and *do* expressions you know in the appropriate columns. Add new expressions to the page as you meet them.

**Come** and **go** are different:



## A

**Come in / out**

We say '**Come in!**' when someone knocks at the door of a room. Then the person who knocked **comes into** the room.



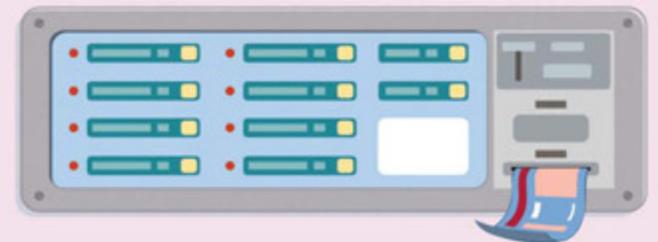
**Come out (of)** is often the opposite of **come in (to)**. A woman **came out of** the shop with two big bags. (I was in the street.) You put your money in and the ticket **comes out of** the machine.



## B

**Come back and come home**

**Come back** means 'return to this place here'. She went away for three days. She **came back** yesterday. (She is here again.)



**Come back** is often used with **from**. They **came back from** Italy yesterday.

**Come home** is similar; 'home' is 'here' for the person speaking.

MUM: What time did you **come home** last night?

SADIE: Oh, about 3 o'clock.

MUM: What! That's much too late!

## C

**Other important uses of come**

A: What country do you **come from**?

B: I'm from Poland. / I **come from** Poland. / I'm Polish.

We're going clubbing tonight. Do you want to **come along** [come with us]?

**Come and see me** some time. [visit me]

**Common mistakes**

I come from Poland [NOT I'm coming from Poland].

**Tip**

Write down any prepositions you find with *come* every time you see them.

# Exercises

## 42.1 Fill the gaps in the sentences.

- I put money in, but the ticket didn't come *out of*..... the machine.
- A: I'm going to Thailand tomorrow.  
B: Oh! When are you coming .....?  
A: In two weeks.
- The teacher came ..... the classroom and started the lesson.
- A: Where do you come .....?  
B: I'm Spanish.
- Come and ..... me at 5 o'clock; we can talk about it then.
- The children come ..... school at 4 o'clock.

## 42.2 What do you think these people are saying? Use words from the box.

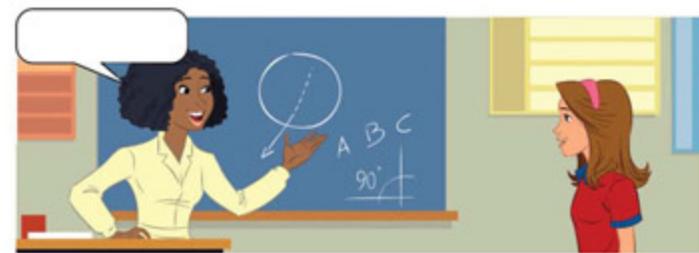
come from    ~~come in~~    come along    come here



1 *Come in!* .....



3 .....



2 .....



4 .....

## 42.3 Fill the gaps using *come* in the correct form.

- Did you *come*..... for your letters? They're on the table.
- She ..... back yesterday.
- He ..... here every Tuesday.
- ..... you ..... to the party tonight?
- Pierre ..... from a small town in Luxembourg.

## 42.4 Answer these questions for yourself.

- What time do you come home every day?
- What country do you come from?
- What do you do when you come into your classroom?

### Over to you

Look up these verbs in a dictionary. Write down the meaning and one example for each verb. After a week, cover the verbs and examples, look at the meanings and see if you can remember the verbs.

Verb	Meaning	Example
come round	.....	.....
come across	.....	.....
come up	.....	.....

## A

**Take with time (it + take + person + time)**

It **takes** Alan 20 minutes to get to work.  
Alan's house → 20 minutes → Alan's office

It **takes** Grace 45 minutes to get to work.  
Grace's flat → 45 minutes → Grace's office

I go to school / university every day. It **takes** me 30 minutes.

I do homework every day. It **took** /*tuk*/ me two hours yesterday.

A: **How long does it take** to get to the station?

B: Fifteen minutes in a taxi.

A: **How long did it take you** to learn the Greek alphabet?

B: A week or two.



## B

**Take something with you**

Are you going out? **Take** an umbrella. It's raining.

Are you going to the beach? **Take** some water with you.

Sorry, you can't **take** your camera into the museum.



## C

**Expressions**

Can I **take a photo** / **photograph** here? /'fəʊtəʊ/ /'fəʊtəgrəf/

A: Are you **taking an** English **course**? B: Yes.

A: Do you have to **take an exam**? B: Yes, at the end of the course.

I want to **take some** Japanese **lessons**.

How do you get to work? I **take the bus**.

In London you can **take the underground** to the London Eye.

We **took a taxi** from the airport to our hotel.

How does Nick get to work? He **takes the train**.



## Tip

Make a page in your notebook for take and put in new words that go with it when you see them (e.g. take a picture, take a look at, take a chance).

# Exercises

## 43.1 Fill the gaps for yourself.

- 1 It *takes* ..... me ..... minutes to get to school / university / work.
- 2 It takes me ..... minutes to go from my house to the nearest railway station.
- 3 It takes me ..... minutes to get to my best friend's house.
- 4 ..... takes me ..... to do one unit of this book.

## 43.2 Complete the sentences using *take* and an expression from the box.

a course some water the train an exam

- 1 At the end of the course, you have to
- 2 You can fly from London to Paris or you can
- 3 You want to learn Russian? Why don't you
- 4 If you go out on a hot day, you need to

*take an exam.*

.....  
 .....  
 ..... ?  
 .....

## 43.3 Look at the pictures. Answer the questions using *take*.



- 1 How does Natalie go to work?  
*She takes the train.*



- 3 How does Christopher go to school?  
 He .....



- 2 How can I get to the airport?  
 You .....



- 4 How do Santiago and Lucia get home every day?  
 They .....

## 43.4 What do you take with you when ...

- 1 you want to take photographs? *I take my camera.*
- 2 it's raining?
- 3 you go to another country?
- 4 you go to your English lessons?
- 5 you need to text someone?



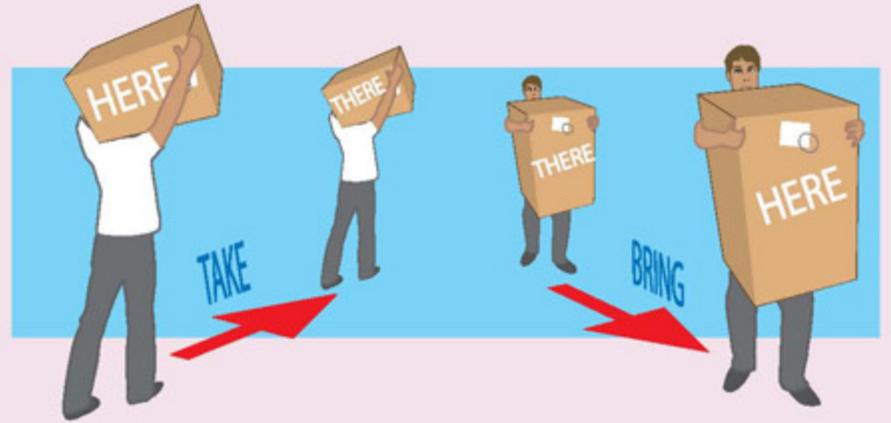
## 43.5 How long did it take you to do this unit?

## A

**Bring and take**

**take** (like go) = from *here* to *there*

**bring** (like come) = from *there* to *here*



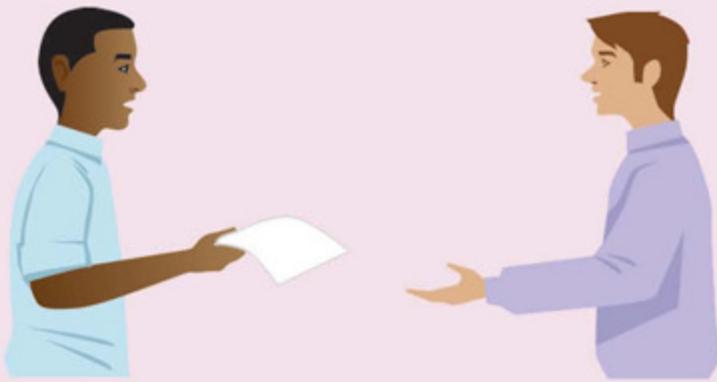
Are you going to school? **Take** your books.

(= from *here* to the school)

Are you going to the kitchen? Can you **bring** me a glass? (= from the kitchen *to here*)

Please **take** this form to the secretary. (= the secretary is *there*)

Come to my house tomorrow and **bring** your guitar. (= for me, my house is *here*)



## B

**Bring somebody something**

A: I've **brought** /brɔ:t/ you some apples from my garden. B: Oh, thank you!

When she visits me, she always **brings** me flowers.



## C

**Bring something back**

It's raining. You can take my umbrella and **bring it back** tomorrow.

JULES: This book is interesting.

MARGAUX: Please **take** it with you and read it.

JULES: Thanks. I'll **bring it back** on Friday.

MARGAUX: OK. No problem.



## A

## Get with adjectives: for changes



It's light. → It's **getting** dark. → It's dark.



She's ill. → She's **getting** better. → She's better. / She's well.

I'm **getting** tired. I want to go to bed.



It's raining! I'm **getting** wet!



## B

## Get with nouns

If you **don't have** something you can **get** it. [get = buy or find]

I want to send a postcard. I have to **get** a stamp.

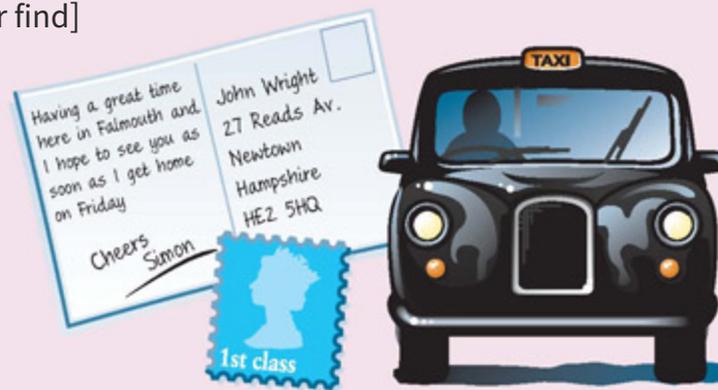
I'm going to the shop to **get** a newspaper.

Do you want a drink? I can **get** some coffee.

Where can I **get** a taxi?

I've finished my studies. Now I want to **get** a job.

My friend is ill! Please **get** a doctor.



## C

## Expressions

Maria and David are **getting married** in April.

A: When you **get to** New York, call me. [arrive at, reach]

B: OK, give me your number.

A: How can I **get to** the airport?

B: Take the airport bus at the bus station.

I'll see you when you **get back** from Hong Kong. [return, come home]

(See also **get up** in **Unit 47**.)

## Common mistakes

When I **get home**, I have my lunch [NOT When I get to home].

I **get there** at 6 o'clock, so please ring me at 6.30 [NOT I get to there].

# Exercises

## 45.1 Complete these sentences using a, b or c.

- I studied too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
- I ate too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
- I sat in the sun too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
- In winter in the north it gets a) tired b) dark c) wet very early.
- Vincent got very a) dark b) better c) wet in the rain.

## 45.2 Complete these sentences using the correct form of *get* and a word from the box.

better light dark cold wet

- The sun is going down. It *'s getting dark.*
- When the sun comes up it .....
- She's in hospital but she .....
- It's raining! I .....
- Please close the window. I .....

## 45.3 What / Who do you get if ...

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 you want to post a letter? <i>a stamp</i> | 5 you want to read the news?           |
| 2 somebody is ill?                          | 6 you want to go to the airport?       |
| 3 you are thirsty?                          | 7 you want to earn some money?         |
| 4 you want to write something down?         | 8 you want to go out and it's raining? |

## 45.4 Complete these sentences.



Singapore (dep. 05.45)



Paris (arr. 12.30)

- This plane *gets to* ..... Paris at 12.30.



university



(25 minutes)



my house

- The bus from the university ..... my house in 25 minutes.



- When does the flight from Moscow ..... London?
- José usually leaves work at 6 and ..... home at 6.30.
- Mike is in New York. He won't ..... till the 14th July.

## 45.5 Answer the questions. Write sentences.

- In your country, how old are people usually when they get married?
- When do people usually get married? Which day? Which month(s)?
- What time do you usually get home every day? How do you get there?

## A

## What are phrasal verbs?

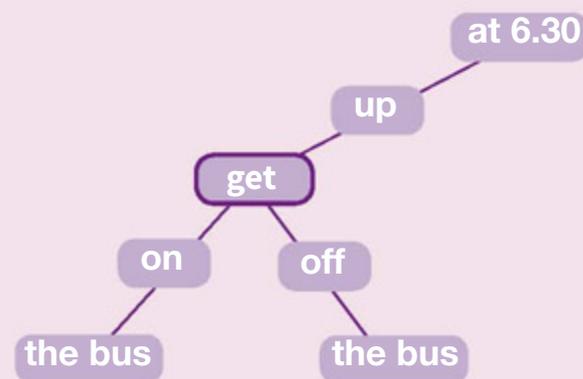
Phrasal verbs have two parts: a verb + a particle.

**get up / on / off**

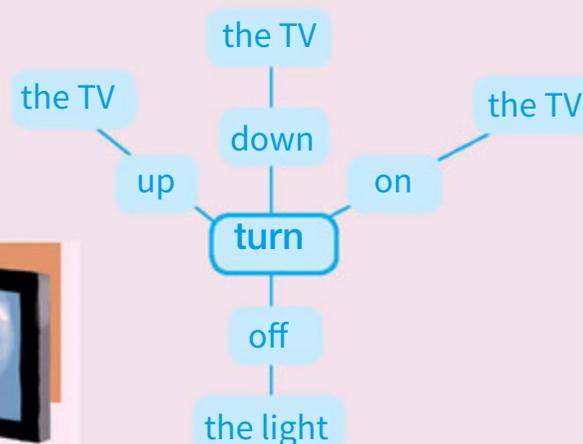
I **got up** at 6.30 this morning. I'm tired now.

We should **get on** the bus. It's leaving in five minutes!

We **got off** the bus at the City Museum.

**turn on / off / up / down**

He always **turns on** the TV at 9 o'clock to watch the news.



It's a sunny day. **Turn** the light **off**.

**Turn** the TV **up**. I can't hear it.

**Turn** the TV **down**. It's too loud.

**go on / off**

Don't stop. **Go on** talking. It's very interesting. [continue]

Karen **went off** and forgot her handbag. [left]

**put something on**

It's cold and windy outside. **Put** your coat **on**. / **Put on** your coat.

**come on**

**Come on!** We're late.

## B

## One phrasal verb, different meanings

Note that one phrasal verb can often have different meanings.

**turn down**

She **turned down** the TV. [made it not so loud]

She **turned down** the invitation. [refused it]

**take off**

Our plane **takes off** at 12.30. [leaves the ground]

She **took off** her shoes. [removed them from her feet]

## Tip

Make a special page in your notebook. Write down any phrasal verbs you see or hear. Organise them into groups, in any way that makes sense to you, for example, clothes, movement.

# Exercises

## 46.1 Match a sentence on the left with a sentence on the right.

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 It's eight o'clock.              | a I'm going to turn it down.   |
| 2 We arrived at our station.       | b Please turn your music down. |
| 3 That funny programme is on soon. | c It's time to get up.         |
| 4 The bus arrived.                 | d We got off the train.        |
| 5 I'm trying to work.              | e Put on your raincoat.        |
| 6 I can't hear the news.           | f We got on.                   |
| 7 It's raining today.              | g Turn on the TV.              |
| 8 I don't want to accept that job. | h Turn the radio up.           |

## 46.2 Put the correct prepositions in these sentences.

- It's dark in here. Turn on the lights.
- Our plane takes ..... at 6.25 and lands at 7.50.
- Come .....! It's time to get ..... You'll be late for school!
- The children took ..... their school uniforms when they got home.
- It's time to turn ..... the TV and go to bed now.
- Get ..... the bus at the train station, then walk about 100 metres and you'll see the theatre.
- The students went ..... working until late at night.
- When they got to the beach, he put..... his swimming trunks and ran down to the sea.

## 46.3 What is happening in these pictures? Use one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page to describe each picture.



1 *They are getting on the coach.* .....



3 .....



2 .....



4 ..... oven.

## 46.4 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

- The plane left at midnight. *The plane took off at midnight.*
- I removed my hat and coat.
- She continued writing novels all her life.
- Michael left without saying goodbye to anybody.
- I refused the invitation to Maya's wedding.

## A

## Things we do every day



wake up



get up



go to the bathroom



have a shower

have breakfast  
/'brekfəst/listen to the  
radio /'lɪsən/

go to work



come home



make dinner

phone (or call)  
a friend

watch TV



go to bed

## B

## Sometimes I ...



wash clothes



clean the house



go for a walk



write letters / emails

## C

## Expressions

A: **How often do you** go out / watch a film?

B: **Three or four times a week.**

A: **What time do you** get up / go to work?

B: **At 7 o'clock normally.**

A: **How do you** go to work?

B: **Usually by bus / train / car.**

(See also **Unit 38: Have / had / had** and **Unit 41: Make / made / made.**)

## Common mistakes

We say I **usually get up** at 8 o'clock, but today I got up at 8.30. [NOT I ~~used to~~ / I'm ~~used to~~ get up at 8 o'clock.]

# Exercises

## 47.1 What do they usually do?

1 *He listens to the radio every morning.*.....



2 She w..... (every Saturday)



3 He c..... (every weekend)



4 He w..... (every evening)



5 She g..... (every Sunday)

## 47.2 Ask questions.

topic	question	answer
1 get up	What <i>time do you get up?</i>	7.30, usually.
2 go for a walk	How ...	Every Saturday.
3 go to work	How ...	By train.
4 have dinner	When ...	At about 7 o'clock usually.
5 come home from work	How ...	I normally walk home.
6 phone your best friend	How ...	Two or three times a week.
7 clean your room	When ...	On Saturday morning usually.
8 have a shower	What ...	Usually at about 11 pm.

## 47.3 Complete the sentences about yourself.

- I usually wake up at .....
- I go to the bathroom and have .....
- I usually have ..... for breakfast.
- I go to work by .....
- I usually have a cup of tea / coffee at ..... o'clock.
- I usually come home at .....
- I usually ..... dinner at ..... o'clock.
- In the evenings I normally ..... or .....
- Sometimes I ..... one or two emails or ..... to the radio.
- I usually ..... to bed at .....

## A

**Say (say / said / said)**

We use **say** when we report someone's words.  
She **said**, 'This is horrible!'  
He **said that** he wanted a drink.

We **say hello / goodbye** and we **say please / thank you / Happy Birthday / Merry Christmas / Happy New Year / Congratulations!**  
*/kəŋgrɪtʃə'leɪʃənz/*

## B

**Tell (tell / told / told)**

**Tell** is usually followed immediately by a person.  
**Say** is not followed immediately by a person.  
**Tell** is often used with *how* and *wh-* words (when, what, why, where) to find out and give information.

**Tell me when** you want to have dinner. She **told me how** to fill in the application form.

You can **tell someone the time / a story / a joke / your name / your address / your phone number.**

## C

**Ask**

**Ask** is used for questions.

My sister **asked me** where I was going. / My sister **asked (me)**, 'Where are you going?'

A: Can I **ask you a question**?

B: Yes.

A: What day of the week were you born?

B: Thursday.

You can **ask someone the way / the time.**

You can **ask somebody to do something** and **ask someone for something.**

I **asked him to** turn off his radio. (*or* I said, 'Please turn off your radio.')

She **asked for** the bill. (*or* She said, 'Can I have the bill, please?')

## D

**Speak / talk / answer / reply**

I like **talking to** you. [having a conversation with you]

**Common mistakes**

Do you speak Japanese? (used for languages) [NOT Do you talk Japanese?]

Can you **answer** the telephone / the door, please? [pick up the phone / open the door to see who it is]

Teacher: Who can **answer** the next question? Joanna?

He didn't **reply to** my email. (also used for letters / texts)

[he did not send me an email back]



We use **say** when we ask about language.

**Common mistakes**

He **told me** his name. [NOT He said me his name.]

**Common mistakes**

**Can you tell me** where the bus station is, please? [NOT Can you say me ... ?]



# Exercises

## 48.1 Fill the gaps with the correct form of say or tell.

- 1 Can you *tell* ..... me where the Plaza Hotel is, please?
- 2 She ..... me her name.
- 3 I ..... goodbye to her.
- 4 'Please ..... me a story,' the little boy .....
- 5 'Come here!' the police officer .....
- 6 The teacher ..... her students that they were very good.

## 48.2 What do you say?

- 1 You want to know if an English friend can help you talk to a Russian person who does not know English.  
Can *you speak Russian?* .....
- 2 You want to know the word for 'tree' in German.  
How .....
- 3 You want to know the time.  
Excuse me, can you .....
- 4 Your course is finished. You want to say goodbye to your teacher.  
I just want to .....
- 5 You want to know when the exam is.  
Can you .....
- 6 The telephone rings. You are busy cooking food. A friend is watching you.  
(to your friend)  
Can you .....

## 48.3 Match the verbs on the left with the words on the right.

- |            |                       |
|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 say      | a an email            |
| 2 answer   | b someone to help you |
| 3 ask for  | c Japanese            |
| 4 reply to | d Happy New Year      |
| 5 tell     | e a friend            |
| 6 talk to  | f someone a joke      |
| 7 ask      | g the bill            |
| 8 speak    | h the door            |

## 48.4 Complete the phrases.

- 1 (on December 24th or 25th) *Happy* ..... Christmas!
- 2 (you want to pay in a restaurant) Can we have ....., please?
- 3 (on the first day of the year) ..... Year!
- 4 (small child to parent) ..... a story before I go to sleep. Please!



## A

### Without transport



When talking about the past, we say: walked / ran / jumped / danced / swam / climbed / fell.

## B

### Transport

verb	transport	example
<b>go by</b>	car / plane / bus / train / bike / motorbike / ship / taxi / underground [NOT by a car]	We <b>went</b> to Paris <b>by</b> train last summer.
<b>take</b>	a / the bus / train / plane / a taxi / the underground	I <b>took</b> a taxi home yesterday.
<b>ride</b>	a bicycle / bike / motorbike / horse	I always <b>rode</b> my bike to school.
<b>drive</b>	a car / bus / train	My uncle <b>drove</b> a bus for ten years.

The pilot **flies** a plane.



How did you get to Istanbul?  
We **flew** there.



### Common mistakes

You **arrive at** or **in** a place [NOT arrive to a place]. The train **arrived in** Tokyo on time. The plane **arrived late at** Heathrow.

## C

### Expressions



### Tip

When you are travelling you will probably see a lot of signs and information in English. Make a note of any new words and expressions you see.

(See **Unit 32: Travelling.**)

# Exercises

## 49.1 Complete the sentences using verbs from A opposite. Write them in the correct form.

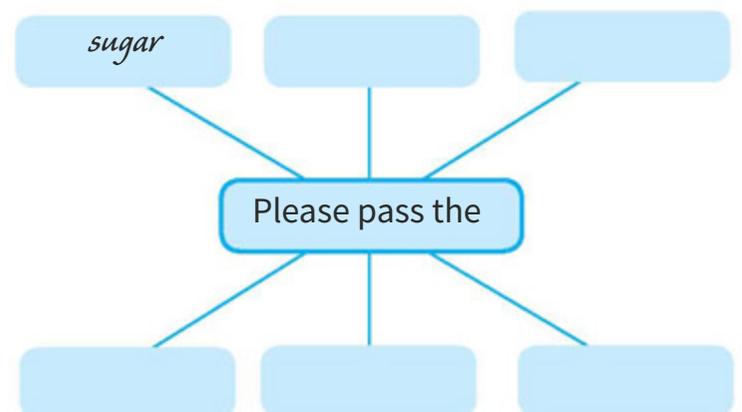
- Jack likes *running*..... round the park every morning but Hannah prefers *walking*..... round it with her dog.
- Everyone ..... at the party last night.
- Every day Claire ..... ten lengths of the pool before breakfast.
- James can ..... very fast. He has won a lot of races.
- Andrew loves ..... mountains.
- The old lady ..... on her way home and broke her arm.
- Stella ..... into the swimming pool and quickly ..... to the other side.
- It is better for you to ..... to work than to go by car.



## 49.2 Ride, drive, go by or take? Write the correct word(s) in the sentence.

- Can you *ride*..... a motorbike?
- He works for a railway company. He ..... a train.
- She sometimes ..... the underground to work.
- He goes away from home a lot. He ..... a lorry.
- I prefer to ..... a bus than ..... car.
- Would you like to ..... an elephant?
- You never forget how to ..... a bicycle.
- I usually ..... a taxi when it rains.

## 49.3 Complete the diagram with six possible words.



## 49.4 Put these sentences into the past tense with the word yesterday.

- Lilian runs a mile every day. *She ran a mile yesterday.*
- Maria often drives her grandmother to the city.
- Charlie flies to Madrid every week.
- I sometimes take a taxi home from the station.
- Bella often falls when she rides her bike.
- Adrian often misses the 7.30 bus to school.
- The taxi driver usually helps the old lady to carry her luggage to the train.
- Madeline usually dances very well.

## 49.5 Answer these questions. Use every day, once a week, once a year or never.

- How often do you walk to work or school? *I walk to work every day.*
- Have you got a bike? How often do you ride it?
- How often do you go swimming? Do you swim in the sea or in a pool?
- How often do you go somewhere by plane?
- How often do you drive a car?
- How often do you go dancing?
- Do you often go climbing?
- How often do you take a taxi?

## A

## Basic conjunctions

Conjunctions join two parts of a sentence. They help to show the connection between the two parts of the sentence.

conjunction	example	use
<b>and</b>	Kate is a student <b>and</b> she works part-time.	We use <i>and</i> to give extra information in the second part of the sentence.
<b>but</b>	They are rich <b>but</b> they aren't happy.	We use <i>but</i> when the second part of the sentence contrasts with the first part.
<b>or</b>	You can pay by credit card <b>or</b> cash.	We use <i>or</i> when the second part of the sentence gives a different possibility.
<b>because</b>	We went home early <b>because</b> we were tired.	We use <i>because</i> when the second part of the sentence explains why the first part happened.
<b>so</b>	I felt ill <b>so</b> I didn't go to work.	We use <i>so</i> when the second part of the sentence gives a result of the first part.
<b>when</b>	I went to the party <b>when</b> the babysitter arrived.	We use <i>when</i> to say when the first part of the sentence happened.
<b>before</b>	We left <b>before</b> it started to rain.	We use <i>before</i> to show that the first part of the sentence happened first.
<b>after</b>	We went for a meal <b>after</b> we had seen the film.	We use <i>after</i> to show that the second part of the sentence happened first.
<b>if</b>	You can have some ice cream <b>if</b> you eat your dinner.	We use <i>if</i> to say that the first part of the sentence will only happen after the second part of the sentence happens and it may not happen.

## B

## Other connecting words

These words are useful for making connections between words and phrases.

word	example	use
<b>only</b>	He <b>only</b> sleeps for three hours every night.	We use <i>only</i> to say something is not very big or very much.
<b>like</b>	She looks <b>like</b> her father.	We use <i>like</i> to make a comparison.
<b>than</b>	She works harder <b>than</b> he does.	We use <i>than</i> after a comparative adjective or adverb.
<b>also</b> <b>too</b> <b>as well</b>	He works in the shop and she does <b>also / too / as well</b> .	We use <i>also, too</i> and <i>as well</i> to say something is extra.

## Tip

These words are small, but they are very important to learn. Write a translation of the words in the first column of the tables.

# Exercises

## 50.1 Choose one of the words to complete each sentence.

- 1 Blake liked school because / but / if he had many friends there.
- 2 Blake left school so / or / and he joined the navy.
- 3 He hadn't travelled much but / before / after he joined the navy.
- 4 Blake was seasick when / if / so he left the navy.
- 5 He took a job in a bank because / after / or it was near his home.
- 6 He will stay at the bank when / if / before he likes it there.
- 7 If he doesn't like his new job, he'll go to university before / if / or he'll move to London.
- 8 He wants to get married if / when / so he's 30.

## 50.2 Write down nine sentences from the columns. Use each of the conjunctions once.



*Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav after they decided to start a business together.*

Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav

Annabelle will marry Aarav

after  
and  
because  
before  
but  
if  
or  
so  
when

she loves him.  
she loved him.  
she doesn't love him.  
they had two sons.  
he moves to London.  
he moved to London.  
she won't marry anyone.  
he was a pop star.  
they decided to start a business together.

## 50.3 Fill in the gaps with words from B opposite.



I love swimming, my brother loves swimming  
<sup>1</sup> too ..... and my sister likes it very much  
<sup>2</sup> ..... I can swim better <sup>3</sup> .....  
 they can! Almost all my family loves swimming.  
 My grandmother swims <sup>4</sup> ..... a fish but she  
 doesn't swim very often - <sup>5</sup> ..... every year or  
 so, now.

## 50.4 Write six sentences about your family and your habits using *only*, *than*, *like*, *also*, *too* and *as well*.

*I play tennis and my mother plays as well. My mother plays better than I do.*

## 50.5 Complete these sentences about yourself.

- 1 I'm learning English because .....
- 2 I'll learn more English if .....
- 3 I'm learning English and .....
- 4 I started learning English when .....
- 5 I can speak some English, so .....
- 6 I'll learn more English but .....

## A

## Time

There are:

365 **days** in a **year** (a year which has 366 days is a **leap year**)

12 **months** /mʌnθs/ in a year

7 days in a **week**

2 weeks in a **fortnight**

24 **hours** in a day

60 **minutes** in an hour (we say **an hour** /'aʊə/)

60 **seconds** in a minute

100 years in a **century**

## B

## Days of the week

**Sunday** /'sʌndeɪ/, **Monday** /'mʌndeɪ/, **Tuesday** /'tʃu:zdeɪ/, **Wednesday** /'wenzdeɪ/, **Thursday** /'θɜ:zdeɪ/, **Friday**, **Saturday**

The names of the days always begin with a capital letter in English.

Saturday + Sunday = **the weekend**



Monday (before 12 pm) = Monday **morning**

Monday (between 12 pm and 6 pm) = Monday **afternoon**

Monday (after 6 pm) = Monday **evening**

We say **on** + days of the week: on Monday, on Saturday, etc. I saw her **on Friday** / **on Tuesday** evening.

## Common mistakes

We say **at** + the weekend: I went to the cinema at the weekend [NOT ~~in~~ the weekend].

## C

## Months and seasons

**Months: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December**

The names of the months always begin with a capital letter in English.

Some countries have four **seasons: spring, summer, autumn** /'ɔ:təm/ and **winter**.



The names of the seasons do not usually begin with a capital letter in English.

We say **in** + months / seasons: **in July, in December, in (the) spring, in (the) summer**, etc.

Birds sing in (the) spring.

## Common mistakes

My birthday is in July [NOT ~~on~~ July].

## Tip

Write the day and date in English every time you do an English exercise, e.g. Wednesday 2nd May 2017.

# Exercises

## 51.1 Answer these questions.

- 1 24 hours = *one day* .....
- 2 100 years = .....
- 3 2 weeks = .....
- 4 60 minutes = .....
- 5 7 days = .....

## 51.2 Complete this British children's song about the number of days in each month.

Thirty days has S *eptember* .....,  
A....., J..... and N.....  
All the rest have .....,  
Except for F .....,  
Which has twenty-eight days  
And ..... in each leap year.

## 51.3 These abbreviations are often used for the days of the week and the months. Write the names out in full.

- |                           |             |               |
|---------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 Mon <i>Monday</i> ..... | 5 Wed ..... | 9 Feb .....   |
| 2 Aug .....               | 6 Jan ..... | 10 Sept ..... |
| 3 Oct .....               | 7 Apr ..... | 11 Tues ..... |
| 4 Sat .....               | 8 Fri ..... | 12 Nov .....  |

## 51.4 What are the next letters in each of these? Why?

- 1 S S *A W* ..... (the first letters of the four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, winter)
- 2 S M T W ..... .....
- 3 J F M A M J J ..... .....

## 51.5 Correct the six mistakes in this paragraph.

I'm going to a party on <sup>S</sup>aturday for Valentina's birthday. Her birthday is on thursday but she wanted to have the party in the weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think june is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues on the summer. My birthday is in Winter and it's too cold to eat outside!

## 51.6 How quickly can you answer these quiz questions?

- 1 How many minutes are there in a quarter of an hour?
- 2 What is the third day of the week?
- 3 How many seconds are there in five minutes?
- 4 What is the seventh month?
- 5 How many months are there in ten years?
- 6 What month is your birthday in?
- 7 What day is it today?
- 8 What day will it be tomorrow?
- 9 What day will it be the day after tomorrow?
- 10 What day was it yesterday?
- 11 What day was it the day before yesterday?
- 12 What month is it?

### A Time in relation to now

**Now** means at this moment. **Then** means at another moment (usually in the past).  
I was born in Edinburgh. **Then** we moved to London. **Now** I live in Cambridge.



It is 10 **o'clock** now.

I got up **four hours ago**, at 6 o'clock.

**An hour ago** it was 9 o'clock.

**two years**  
**2014-2016**

**for two years**  
**from 2014 to 2016**

2014 —————> 2016

**last year / last week / last Saturday**

**next year / next week / next summer**

It is July **now**.

**Last** month it was June.

**Next** month it will be August.

When we talk about time in general, we talk about **the past**, **the present** and **the future**.

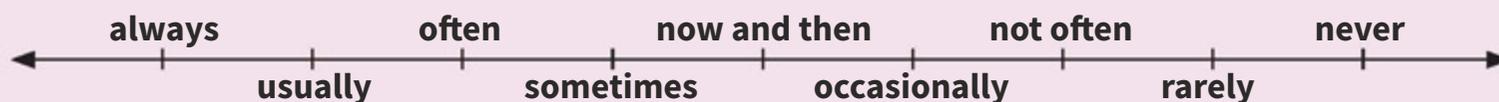
**In the past** people didn't have television.

People may travel to Mars **in the future**.

#### JANUARY

M	T	W	T	F	S	S
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30	31			

### B Frequency adverbs



It **always** snows in Russia in winter.

It **often** rains in the UK.

The Ancient Romans **never** went to America or Australia.

### C Expressions

Notice the use of **a** in these expressions of frequency.

**once** [one time] **a week**: I go swimming **once a week**, every Saturday.

**twice** [two times] **a day**: I clean my teeth **twice a day**.

**three times a year**: I see my uncle **three times a year**.

**four times a month**: I play football **four or five times a month**.

I'll be with you **in a moment** [a very short time].

Nora's in Paris **at the moment** [now].

See you **soon** [in a short time]!

We met **recently** [not long ago].

# Exercises

## 52.1 Fill the gaps with a preposition from the opposite page.

<sup>1</sup> *In* ..... the past, Rosa worked in many different countries. Rosa worked in Hong Kong  
<sup>2</sup> ..... three years, <sup>3</sup> ..... 2008 <sup>4</sup> ..... 2011. <sup>5</sup> ..... the moment she  
 is working in Tokyo. She will stay there <sup>6</sup> ..... two more years.

## 52.2 Draw lines to match the centuries to their time.

- |                    |   |             |
|--------------------|---|-------------|
| 1 the 19th century | — | the past    |
| 2 the 22nd century |   | the present |
| 3 the 18th century |   | the future  |
| 4 the 21st century |   |             |
| 5 the 20th century |   |             |

## 52.3 Are these sentences true about you? If not, write them out correctly. Use other frequency adverbs from B opposite.

- I always go swimming on Fridays. *I sometimes go swimming on Fridays.*
- I usually go to school / work by bus.
- I occasionally watch TV.
- I rarely drink milk.
- I often wear a hat.
- I rarely eat chocolate.
- I always go to bed at 10.
- I never go to the theatre.

## 52.4 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

- Matthew will get his exam results very soon.  
Do you think Matthew will get them next year, next month or tomorrow? *Probably tomorrow*
- Alice and Adam met for the first time recently.  
Do you think they first met last year, six months ago or a week ago?
- I'll help you in a moment.  
Do you think I'll help you next week, in two hours or in a few minutes?
- It's 6 o'clock now.  
Two hours ago it started to snow. What time was it then?

## 52.5 Look at the table and write sentences using expressions like *once a week*, *three times a month*, etc.

*John plays tennis twice a week.*

	play tennis	practise the piano	have a business meeting in Germany
John	Mondays and Thursdays	Saturdays	the first Friday every month
Julia and Alexa	Tuesdays, Fridays and Saturdays	every morning and every evening	once in January, March, May, July, August and December every year

## A

## General place words

Come **here**, please. [to me, to where I am]

Have you been to Lima? I'm going **there** in April. [not here, another place]

Max is coming **back** from Portugal in May. [to here again, to this place]

There are books and papers **everywhere** in my room. [in all parts / all places]

(See **Unit 42: Come / came / come.**)

## B

## Prepositions

Luke is **in the kitchen**, making dinner.

There are two restaurants **in the village**.

Samantha lives **in Seoul / South Korea / Asia**.

in

I'll meet you **at the station**.

I always sit **at the front of the class**.

at

I like that photo **on the wall**.

Don't put your books **on the chair**. I want to sit **on it!**

on

## C

## Positions

the **top** of the mountain

the **middle** of the road

the **bottom** of the glass



the **front** of the car

the **side** of the car

the **back** of the car



the **beginning** of the motorway

the **end** of the motorway

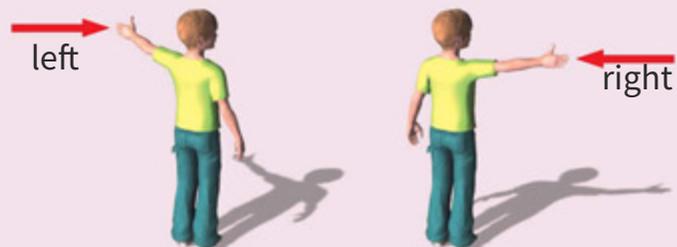


## D

## Left and right

This is his **left** hand. This is his **right** hand.

In York Street, there is a cinema **on the left** and a restaurant **on the right**.



## E

## Home and away

Is Eleanor **at home** [in her house / flat]?

No, sorry, she's **out** [not here for a short time, e.g. at the shops or at work].

No, sorry, she's **away** [not here for a longer time, e.g. on holiday].

No, sorry, she's **abroad** [in another country].

# Exercises

## 53.1 Fill the gaps with *here, there, back* or *everywhere*.

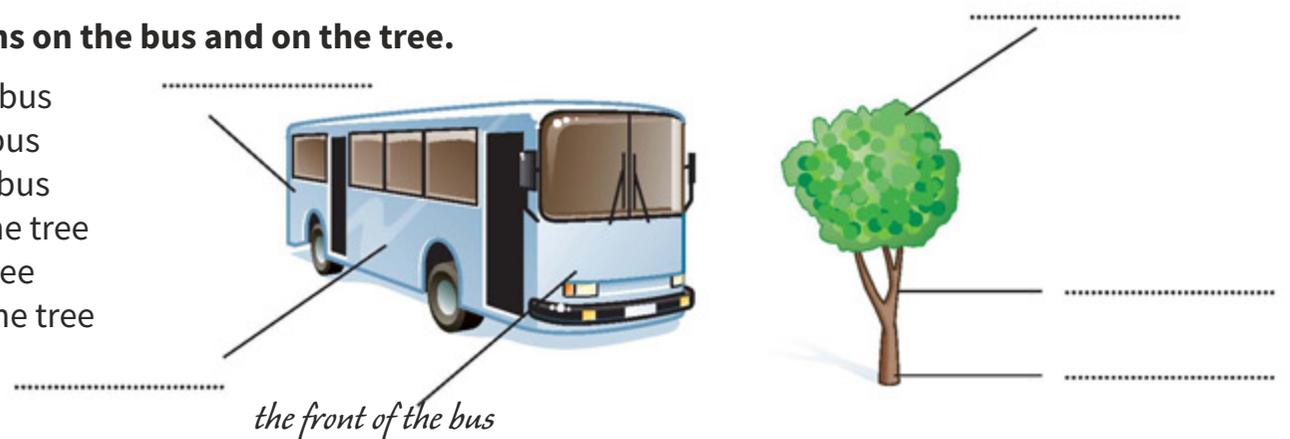
- 1 Thanks for lending me your dictionary. I'll bring it ..... *back* ..... soon. (See **Unit 44: Bring / brought / brought**.)
- 2 Come ..... Emma! Don't go near the road! (See **Unit 42: Come / came / come**.)
- 3 This letter is for a teacher at the university. Can you take it ..... (See **Unit 43: Take / took / taken**.)
- 4 I opened the washing machine too soon. Now there's water ..... !
- 5 I want to leave this letter in Nora's office. Are you going ..... ?
- 6 I'm going to Italy tomorrow, but I'm coming ..... on Friday.

## 53.2 Fill the gaps with the correct preposition.

- 1 My brother works ..... *in* ..... Paris.
- 2 Why do you always sit ..... the back of the class?
- 3 Let's go and sit ..... the sofa.
- 4 What time do you arrive? I'll meet you ..... the bus station.
- 5 There was a picture of an old man ..... the wall.
- 6 Do you usually study ..... your bedroom or ..... the living room?

## 53.3 Mark the positions on the bus and on the tree.

- 1 the front of the bus
- 2 the side of the bus
- 3 the back of the bus
- 4 the middle of the tree
- 5 the top of the tree
- 6 the bottom of the tree



## 53.4 Fill the gaps with *out, away* or *abroad*.

- 1 I'd like to work ..... *abroad* ..... and learn about a new country.
- 2 Is Lily here? No, she's ..... but she'll be back in about five minutes.
- 3 I'm going ..... tomorrow. I'm going to stay with my sister for a few days.
- 4 When we go ..... we like to go ..... and see new countries.

## 53.5 Answer these questions about yourself and about this book.

- 1 Are you studying English at home or abroad?
- 2 Are you going away this year?
- 3 What have you got in your left or right hand at the moment?
- 4 What is there at the end of this book?
- 5 Where is **Unit 3** in this book? (beginning / middle / end?)
- 6 Where is **Unit 36** in this book? (beginning / middle / end?)

Adjectives and adverbs can describe **manner**, i.e. *how* we do something.

### A Fast and slow



adjectives This is a **fast** car.  
adverbs This car goes very **fast**.



This is a **slow** car.  
This car goes very **slowly**.

### B Loud /laud/ and quiet /'kwaɪət/



adjectives The music is too **loud**.  
adverbs The children sang **loudly**.



It's very **quiet** here.  
The teacher speaks very **quietly**.  
We can't hear him.

### C Good and bad



adjectives She's a **good** driver.  
adverbs She drives **well**.



He's a **bad** driver.  
He drives **badly**.

### D Right and wrong

This sentence is **right**.

I like coffee very much. [✓]

This sentence is **wrong**.

I like very much coffee. [X]

### E Expressions with way



He's speaking **in a friendly way**.



She's speaking **in an unfriendly way**.

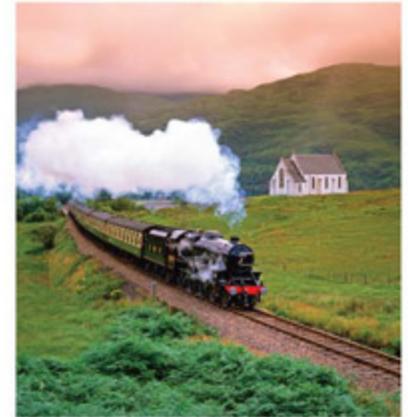
You're doing that **the wrong way**.  
Let me show you **the right way** to do it.



# Exercises

## 54.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 This train is **slow**. It goes very *slowly*.....
- 2 He is a **bad** singer. He sings very .....
- 3 She is always **loud**. She speaks very .....
- 4 He's a **fast** swimmer. He swims very .....
- 5 This girl is **quiet**. She always speaks .....
- 6 He's a **good** English-speaker. He speaks English .....



## 54.2 Complete the sentences.

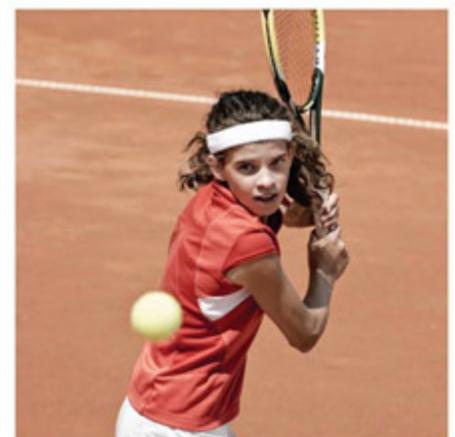
- 1 Please don't play your music so *loudly*..... - I'm trying to study.
- 2 Let's take the ..... train, not the fast one.
- 3 Katie is very ..... at French but bad at German.
- 4 Why is Fiona behaving ..... an unfriendly way?
- 5 I hope this is the ..... answer.
- 6 It is better to do something well than to do it .....
- 7 The children are playing very ..... - they know that grandma is asleep.
- 8 Did I do this exercise ..... right way?

## 54.3 Are the definitions right or wrong? Use a dictionary.

word	definition	right (✓)	wrong (X)
suddenly	very slowly		X
sadly	in an unhappy way		
strangely	not in a normal way		
quickly	very slowly		
easily	with no difficulty		

## 54.4 Complete these sentences about yourself and your friends or family.

- 1 My *sister plays tennis*..... well.
- 2 My ..... badly.
- 3 I ..... fast.
- 4 My ..... slow.
- 5 My ..... quiet.
- 6 I ..... loudly.
- 7 My ..... in a friendly way.
- 8 I ..... the right way.



## A

## What are countable and uncountable nouns?



apples



shoes



plates

COUNTABLE You can count them: four apples, two shoes.



sugar



money



luggage

UNCOUNTABLE You can't count it. [NOT three luggages]

Can I have **three apples** and **some sugar**, please?

**Are** these **shoes** yours? **Is** this **luggage** yours?

## B

## Everyday uncountable nouns



This **furniture** is modern.



The **traffic** is bad today.



I'll give you some **advice** about your future.



He can give some useful **information** about Bangkok.



There is some bad **news** today.



It's terrible **weather** today.



**Accommodation** here is expensive.



I need some fresh **air**.



Studying is hard **work**.



Air **travel** is faster than rail **travel**.



## C

## Food

A lot of uncountable nouns are kinds of food and drink.



rice



spaghetti



butter



bread



milk



water



tea



coffee

*Note:* When we want to say how much we want, we say **two loaves** of bread, **three litres** of milk, **a kilo** of rice.

## Tip

When you learn a new noun, write it down in a phrase which shows if it is countable or uncountable.

# Exercises

## 55.1 Fill the gaps with an uncountable noun from the opposite page.

- 1 I'd like to buy a car but I haven't got enough *money* .....
- 2 Cows give us ..... and .....
- 3 If you don't know what to do, ask your parents for some .....
- 4 The ..... at the seaside is very good for you.
- 5 Rob left school last month and is now looking for .....
- 6 There is always a lot of ..... in central London.

## 55.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| 1 heavy  | a information |
| 2 useful | b travel      |
| 3 bad    | c water       |
| 4 modern | d luggage     |
| 5 brown  | e news        |
| 6 cold   | f furniture   |
| 7 space  | g bread       |

## 55.3 Fill the gaps with the correct form of the verb *be*.

- 1 Accommodation in the city centre *is* ..... expensive.
- 2 Spaghetti with Italian tomato sauce ..... very good.
- 3 The weather in Scotland ..... best in the autumn.
- 4 The news ..... better today than it ..... yesterday.
- 5 Travel ..... the most important thing in Sam's life.
- 6 Their furniture ..... very old and very beautiful.

## 55.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 The news ~~are~~ not very good today. *is*
- 2 Where can I get some informations about your country?
- 3 Let me give you an advice.
- 4 Cook these spaghetti for ten minutes.
- 5 Can I have a bread, please?
- 6 We need to buy some new furnitures.
- 7 The east of the country usually has a better weather than the west.
- 8 I must find a new accommodation soon.

### Over to you

Use a dictionary to check if these words are countable or uncountable and make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook:

equipment  
biscuit  
homework  
vehicle



## A

## Good adjectives

a **good** restaurantan **excellent** restauranta **wonderful** view  
/'wʌndəfəl/

good \_\_\_\_\_ very good  
 nice                      lovely                      great                      wonderful                      excellent



A: That's a **nice** jacket.  
 B: Thank you.

It's a **great** film. We all loved it.



A: It's a **lovely** day today! /'lʌvli/  
 B: Yes, it is.

A: Do you want to go to London on Saturday?  
 B: That's an **excellent** idea! [very good]

## B

## Bad adjectives

The weather this summer was **very bad**.

Other words that mean very bad are **dreadful, horrible, terrible**:

The food in that café was **horrible**. Nobody liked it.

What's that **dreadful** smell?

I had a **terrible** day at work today.

The traffic's **terrible** at 5 o'clock on Fridays.

**bad** weather

## C

## Expressions

A: The train arrives at 7 o'clock; dinner is at 8 o'clock.

B: **Excellent!** / **Great!** / **Wonderful!** / **Lovely!** / **Perfect!**

*Note:* We often say **not bad** when we are speaking.

A: I get \$500 a week in my job.

B: That's **not bad!** (= good!)

We use these adjectives with **how**:

A: I have to get up at 5.30 tomorrow.

B: Oh, **how awful!** / **how horrible!**

A: I've got a great new job in New York!

B: **How nice!** / **How wonderful!** / **How lovely!**

My hair is **awful!**

## Common mistakes

How awful! / How horrible!  
 [NOT How bad!]

# Exercises

## 56.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 My hair's *awful* ..... I must go to the hairdresser's.
- 2 The weather's ..... I don't want to go out.
- 3 The traffic is ..... in the city centre. Take the train.
- 4 That's a(n) ..... idea! Let's do it!
- 5 How ..... ! Three exams on the same day!
- 6 What a ..... house! The sea is only 100 metres away!
- 7 My timetable's not ..... I'm free on Wednesdays and Fridays.
- 8 We have a ..... view of the mountains from our hotel room.

## 56.2 What can you say? Someone says to you ...

- 1 Do you like my new skirt? *Yes, it's lovely!*
- 2 I have to get up at 4.30 tomorrow morning.
- 3 Do you want to go out for dinner tonight?
- 4 (*in your town*) Excuse me. Is there a good restaurant in this town?
- 5 What do you think of your English lessons?
- 6 Is it OK if I come to your house at 6.30 tomorrow evening?

## 56.3 Match the words on the left with an expression from the right.

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 Blue sky, sun 25°                             | a Wonderful news     |
| 2 Five stars (*****)                            | b Awful weather      |
| 3 I don't want to walk. Let's take a taxi.      | c Lovely weather     |
| 4 90 out of 100 in an exam                      | d A very good idea   |
| 5 ( <i>in summer</i> ) Grey sky, wind, rain, 4° | e An excellent hotel |

## 56.4 Put these words into the good or bad column. Use a dictionary.

dreadful   brilliant   marvellous   nasty   fine

good	bad
	<i>dreadful</i>

## 56.5 Now think of two nouns to go with each of the adjectives in 56.4. Use a dictionary to help you.

- dreadful *weather / film* .....
- brilliant .....
- marvellous .....
- nasty .....
- fine .....

## A

## Phrasal and prepositional verbs

Some verbs are used with different particles and prepositions.

I **listen to** the radio in bed in the morning.

I **waited for** the bus for half an hour yesterday.

I **asked for** a black coffee, not a white one.

Where do I **pay for** our meal?

I hope you can **come to** my party.

This book **belongs to** Sarah Smith.

What are you **thinking about**?

Lauren **thanked** her mother **for** the present.

Damian **apologised for** being late.



## B

## Phrasal verbs

Some verbs have different meanings when they are used with different prepositions, for example, **look**.

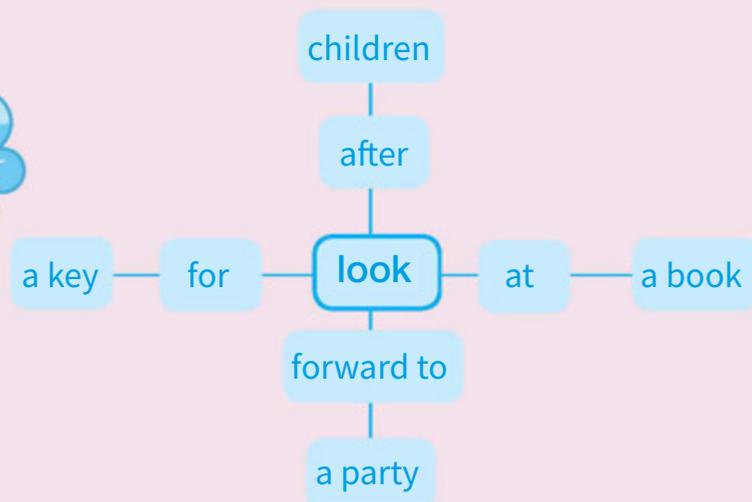
I love **looking at** old photographs.

If you want to find your key, you must **look for** it.

Parents **look after** their children.

[they take care of them]

You **look forward to** something nice in the future, for example, a friend's visit, or a holiday.



## C

## Adjectives

Some adjectives are also followed by prepositions.

I'm **good at** geography but **bad at** maths.

I'm **interested in** (hearing) all your news.

He is **afraid of** mice.

Lucy is **proud of** winning a medal and her mother is proud of her.

*Note:* You are **used to** what you know well: I'm **used to** getting up early, I always do.

You have **to get used to** something new, for example a new school or driving on the other side of the road.

## Common mistakes

She's a lovely person and I'm really **happy about** her success  
[NOT happy for her success].

## D

## Grammar

Prepositions are followed by a noun: Artur is **good at tennis** or by the *-ing* form of the verb: Artur is **good at playing** the piano.

## Tip

Look carefully at prepositions when you read in English. Make a note of any phrases which use prepositions in a new way.

# Exercises

## 57.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 John is waiting                 | a for his mistake.       |
| 2 This bicycle belongs            | b about the holidays.    |
| 3 The children thanked their aunt | c for a train to London. |
| 4 Molly is listening              | d to the hotel.          |
| 5 He apologised                   | e for our tickets.       |
| 6 Let me pay                      | f to the football match. |
| 7 Javier is thinking              | g to music on her phone. |
| 8 Over 100 people came            | h for the money.         |

## 57.2 Complete these sentences using the appropriate preposition(s) and a word or phrase from the box.

books    the children    me    people    my party    it    a new one    them

- Isabel's granddaughter can't read yet but she likes looking at books
- A nurse looks .....
- I can't find my glasses? Could you help me look .....?
- It's my birthday soon. I'm really looking .....
- Why are you looking ..... in that way? Is my face dirty?
- I don't like my job very much. I'm looking .....
- Alex is going to France in July. He is looking .....
- I often look ..... when their parents go out.

## 57.3 Write prepositions.

Josephine has got used <sup>1</sup> to her new school and is doing well there. She is very good <sup>2</sup> ..... English and maths. She always listens <sup>3</sup> ..... her teachers. She is very interested <sup>4</sup> ..... sport and she belongs <sup>5</sup> ..... a tennis club and a swimming club. Her parents were very proud <sup>6</sup> ..... her when she won a medal for swimming last month. Josephine was very happy <sup>7</sup> ..... her medal too, of course. She showed it to me when she came <sup>8</sup> ..... my house last Saturday.

## 57.4 Hiroshi is a visitor from Japan. Make sentences about what he found strange (X) in Britain and what he didn't find strange (✓).

- speaking English every day X *He wasn't used to speaking English every day.*
- driving on the left ✓ *Hiroshi was used to driving on the left.*
- eating British food X
- traffic jams ✓
- expensive shops ✓
- British money X

## 57.5 Answer the questions about yourself.

- What are / were you good at at school? What are / were you bad at?
- What do you usually ask for when you go to a café?
- What are you proud of?
- What are you afraid of?
- What kind of music do you like listening to?
- What are you looking forward to?
- Do you belong to any clubs?
- Are you used to eating different kinds of food?

Prefixes come at the beginning of words. They can help you to understand what a new word means. Here are some common prefixes.

prefix	meaning	examples
<b>ex</b> (+ noun)	was but now isn't	<b>ex-wife, ex-boyfriend</b>
<b>half</b> (+ noun or adjective)	50% of something	<b>half-price, half-hour</b>
<b>in, im</b> (+ adjective)	not	<b>informal, impossible</b>
<b>non</b> (+ adjective or noun)	not	<b>non-smoking</b>
<b>pre</b> (+ noun, adjective, verb)	before	<b>pre-school, pre-heat</b>
<b>re</b> (+ verb)	again	<b>redo, rewrite</b>
<b>un</b> (+ adjective or noun)	not	<b>unhappy, unsafe</b>

An **ex-wife** is a woman who is now divorced.

An **ex-boyfriend** is someone who is no longer your boyfriend.

Something that cost £10 yesterday and costs £5 today is **half-price**.

A **half-hour** journey is a journey of 30 minutes.

**Informal** clothes are clothes like jeans and trainers. Formal clothes are things like a suit.

If something is **impossible**, you can't do it. It's impossible to read with your eyes closed.

You must not smoke in a **non-smoking** restaurant.

**Pre-school** children are too young to go to school.

You nearly always need to **pre-heat** the oven before you cook something.

To **redo** something is to do it a second time, and to **rewrite** something is to write it a second time.

**Unhappy** means sad, the opposite of happy.

**Unsafe** means dangerous, the opposite of safe.



### Tip

Sometimes words with prefixes have a hyphen (-), e.g. a half-hour programme, and sometimes they don't, e.g. an impossible question. Use a dictionary when you are not sure if there is a hyphen or not.

# Exercises

## 58.1 Choose one of the words from the opposite page to fit in these sentences.

- 1 This part of the restaurant is *non-smoking*.
- 2 I can't read this. Please ..... your homework.
- 3 In ..... English we often say 'Hi', not 'Good morning'.
- 4 I liked school but my sister was very ..... there.
- 5 I bought two T-shirts because they were ..... in the sale.
- 6 Don't walk on that wall - the notice says it is .....

## 58.2 Write your own sentences to show what these words mean.

- 1 ex-wife *Jennifer Aniston is Brad Pitt's ex-wife.*
- 2 ex-boyfriend .....
- 3 redo .....
- 4 impossible .....
- 5 pre-school .....

## 58.3 What do you think these words and phrases mean? Look at the table opposite to help you.

- 1 an ex-husband *a man who is now divorced from his wife*
- 2 pre-exam nerves
- 3 an incorrect answer
- 4 an unread book
- 5 to retell a story
- 6 a half-brother
- 7 an unfinished letter
- 8 a non-alcoholic drink
- 9 to reread a book
- 10 to resend an email

## 58.4 Find the negative forms of these words. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 possible *impossible*
- 2 comfortable
- 3 polite
- 4 pleasant
- 5 attractive

### Over to you

Look at the table opposite and write one more example of a word using each prefix. Use a dictionary to help you. Write a sentence using your word.

*ex:* My ex-boss lives near me.

*half:* You stop at half-time in a football match.

Suffixes come at the end of words. They help you to understand the meaning of a new word. Here are some common suffixes.

suffix	meaning	examples
<b>er, or</b> (noun)	person	<b>worker, swimmer, instructor</b>
<b>er, or</b> (noun)	machine, thing	<b>cooker, calculator</b>
<b>ful</b> (adjective)	full of	<b>useful, beautiful</b>
<b>less</b> (adjective)	without	<b>useless, endless</b>
<b>ly</b>	makes an adverb from an adjective	<b>quickly, happily</b>
<b>ness</b>	makes an abstract noun from an adjective	<b>happiness, sadness</b>
<b>y</b>	makes an adjective from a noun	<b>sandy, sunny</b>

He's a hard **worker**. He works 12 hours a day.  
 She's a very good **swimmer**. She was in the Olympic team.  
 Her tennis is much better now that she has a new **instructor**.  
 We've got a new gas **cooker** so the food should be delicious!  
 Can we use our **calculators** in the maths test?



Thanks for the information. It was very **useful**.  
 What a **beautiful** photo. I think it will win the competition.

This book is no help at all - it's **useless**.  
 I can't finish this book - it's **endless**.

He was late for work so he went **quickly** to the station.  
 They are **happily** married with two young children.

The mother was smiling with **happiness** as she held her baby in her arms.  
 They said goodbye with great **sadness** because they knew they would probably never meet again.

That beach is very popular with tourists  
 because it is long and **sandy**.  
 It's a lovely **sunny** day - let's go to the beach.



# Exercises

## 59.1 Which of the example words from the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?



1 a s*unny day*.....



3 a s.....



5 a c.....



2 a golf i.....



4 He's smiling h.....



6 a u..... thing

## 59.2 Find the adjectives and match them with the nouns they go with in the box. Some adjectives can go with more than one noun.

electric worker fast beautiful cooker sandy weather sunny car hard idea useful  
book endless swimmer beach guitar smile picture fun useless

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| 1 <i>electric cooker / guitar</i> ..... | 6 ..... |
| 2 .....                                 | 7 ..... |
| 3 .....                                 | 8 ..... |
| 4 .....                                 | 9 ..... |
| 5 .....                                 |         |

## 59.3 Complete the sentences using the word in brackets and a suffix.

- Can I use your bottle *opener*....., please? (open)
- I'm tired because I slept very ..... last night. (bad)
- The waiter was very ..... and explained everything on the menu. (help)
- Thank you very much for all your ..... (kind)
- It's important not to make ..... mistakes in your writing. (care)
- It was wet and ..... most of last week. (wind)
- I did the homework very ..... (easy)
- Do you know a good ..... who could do some work on our house? (build)

## 59.4 What do you think these words and phrases mean? Use the information about suffixes from the opposite page to help you.

- a hair dryer *a thing that you use to dry your hair*
- a traveller
- slowly
- hopeful
- rainy
- painless
- badly
- a tin opener
- a footballer
- snowy

This unit looks at words which are easy to mix up.

## A

## Similar sounds

**quite** /kwaɪt/ / **quiet** /'kwaɪət/

This book is **quite** good. bad → quite good → good

My bedroom is very **quiet** [silent].

**lose** /luːz/ **loose** /luːs/

A: Why do I always **lose** my keys!

B: Here they are.

A: Oh, thank you!

If you **lose** something, you do not know where it is / you can't find it.

These trousers are very **loose**. (loose means they are not tight, because they are too big)



**fell** / felt

**Fell** is the past of **fall**.

Yesterday I **fell** and broke my arm.

**Felt** is the past of **feel**.

I **felt** ill yesterday, but I **feel** OK today.



**cook** / **cooker**

He is a very good **cook** [the person who cooks].

This **cooker** costs £500. [the thing you cook on]

## B

## Similar or related meanings

**lend** / **borrow**

If you **lend** something, you *give* it.

If you **borrow** something, you *get* it.

Sam wants a bicycle:

SAM: Will you **lend** me your bicycle? (= you *give* it to me for one day / an hour, etc.)

or Can I **borrow** your bicycle? (= I *get* it from you)

RITA: Yes, take it.

SAM: Thanks.

**check** / **control**

The passport officer **checked** my passport. [looked at it]

We use the mouse to **control** the computer. [tell it what to do]



Do you want to borrow it?



## C

## Other words often mixed up

They're **waiting for** the bus.

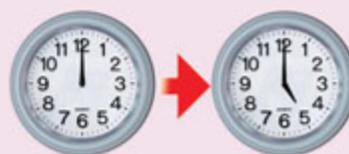
I **hope** I pass my exams. [I really want to pass]

I haven't studied; I **expect** I'll fail my exams. [it's probable]

In English the **afternoon** is from about 12 o'clock till 5 or 6 pm.

The **evening** is from 5 or 6 pm until about 9 or 10 pm.

After 9 or 10 pm it is the **night**.



afternoon

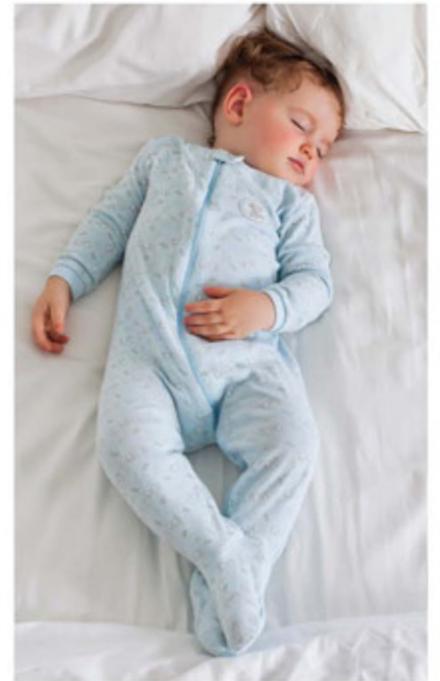


evening

# Exercises

## 60.1 Fill the gaps with words from A opposite. The first letter is given.

- 1 Please be q *uiet*..... . The baby is sleeping.
- 2 If you l..... your passport you must call the embassy.
- 3 I f..... tired this morning, but I am OK now.
- 4 We are going to buy a c..... for our new kitchen.
- 5 She f..... and broke her leg. She had to go to hospital.
- 6 It's q..... cold today.
- 7 Do you have this skirt in a smaller size? This one is too l.....
- 8 My sister is a good c..... . I love eating at her house.



## 60.2 What does each word below sound like? Circle the correct word.

- 1 lose      juice      shoes
- 2 loose     juice      shoes
- 3 quite     right     higher
- 4 quiet     right     higher

## 60.3 Answer these questions.

- 1 Why do we use a mouse with a computer? To *control it*.....
- 2 What does the passport officer do to your passport? He/She .....
- 3 If you want to use someone's camera for two hours, what do you say?  
Can I .....
- 4 What do you say to someone at 3 pm? Good .....
- 5 What do people do at a bus stop? They .....
- 6 What do you say to a friend if you need £1?  
Can you .....
- 7 What do you say if someone makes too much noise? Please be .....

## 60.4 Answer these questions.

- 1 Are you expecting any visitors today?
- 2 What do you hope to do this summer?
- 3 Do you borrow things from your friends? What things?
- 4 Would you lend £100 to your best friend?

Look at these units to find other words that are often confused:

<b>Do</b> and <b>make</b>	<b>Units 40</b> and <b>41</b>
<b>Take</b> and <b>bring</b>	<b>Units 43</b> and <b>44</b>
<b>Say, tell, speak</b> and <b>talk</b>	<b>Unit 48</b>
<b>Rob</b> and <b>steal</b>	<b>Unit 34</b>

### Over to you

Look up these pairs of verbs in a dictionary and make notes on the difference in meaning:

- 1 lie - lay - lain  
lay - laid - laid
- 2 rise - rose - risen  
raise - raised - raised

# Answer key

## Unit 1

- 1.1** 2 brother                      7 nephew  
3 aunt                              8 niece  
4 uncle                            9 mother  
5 grandmother                10 wife  
6 grandfather                11 cousin

- 1.2** 2 aunt  
3 only child  
4 father  
5 wife  
6 mother  
7 grandchildren  
8 wives  
9 grandparents (parents is also a possible answer)

**1.3** *Possible answers:*

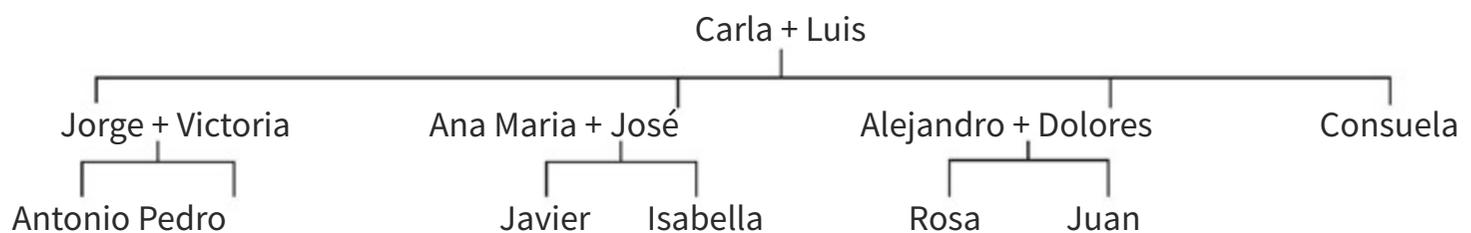
- 1 Marta has / has got one brother and one sister.
- 2 Marta has / has got two cousins.
- 3 Marta has / has got two nephews but she hasn't got any nieces.
- 4 Marta has / has got only one grandmother now.
- 5 Marta doesn't come from a very big family.

**1.4** *Your own answer*

## Over to you

*Possible family tree:*

I am José. Ana Maria is my wife. Javier and Isabella are our children. Javier is our son and Isabella is our daughter. Rosa is our niece. Antonio, Pedro and Juan are our nephews. Carla and Luis are my parents. Jorge is my brother and Dolores and Consuela are my sisters.



## Unit 2

**2.1** *Possible answers:*

- 2 My father was born in South Africa on June 4th 1959.
- 3 My brother was born in London on June 6th 1984.
- 4 My husband was born in Russia on February 6th 1979.
- 5 My son was born in Cambridge on October 16th 2005.

- 2.2** 2 (bride)groom                      6 funeral  
3 single                                  7 honeymoon  
4 weigh                                  8 widowed  
5 divorced

- 2.3** 2 to      3 of      4 on      5 born      6 after

- 2.4** 2 Christopher Columbus was born in 1451 and died in 1506.  
 3 Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452 and died in 1519.  
 4 Princess Diana was born in 1961 and died in 1997.  
 5 Heath Ledger was born in 1979 and died in 2008.

- 2.5** 2 death    3 dead    4 died    5 dead

**2.6** Possible answer:

I have one brother and one sister. My sister got married this year. For her honeymoon, she went to Italy. My brother has two children. They were born in 2001 and 2008.

**Unit 3**

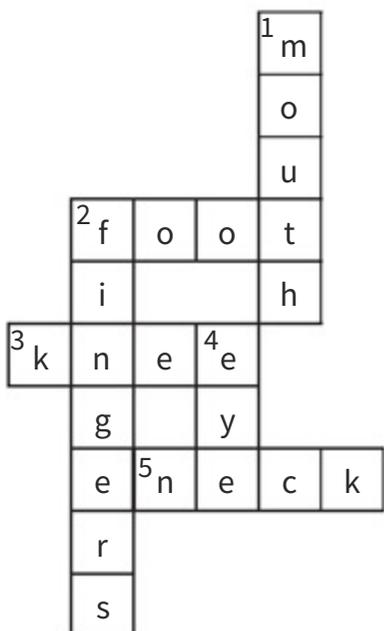
- 3.1** 2 nose                      7 tooth  
 3 heart                      8 thumb  
 4 stomach                  9 back  
 5 shoulder                 10 waist  
 6 ear

- 3.2** 2 toes                      6 ears  
 3 teeth                      7 knee / shoulders  
 4 nose                      8 blood  
 5 heart                      9 brain

- 3.3** 2 That woman has got very big **feet**.  
 3 My grandfather has a pain in **his** shoulder.  
 4 The baby has already got two **teeth**.  
 5 The little girl needs to wash **her** face and **her** hands before dinner.  
 6 My **hair is** dirty. I need to wash **it**.

- 3.4** 2 football                  5 headscarf  
 3 lipstick                  6 handbag  
 4 hairbrush

**3.5**



**Unit 4**

- 4.1** 1 suit, shirt, tie  
 2 T-shirt, shorts  
 3 socks, trainers  
 4 carrying, bag  
 5 belt  
 6 jacket, coat

- 4.2** 2 belt - waist                      6 glove - hand  
 3 hat - head                              7 tights - legs  
 4 glasses - eyes                        8 scarf - neck  
 5 shoe - foot

- 4.3** 1 is                                        5 were; are  
 2 is wearing                              6 is  
 3 has; is carrying                       7 are  
 4 is; are                                    8 is wearing / has

- 4.4** 2 jumper                                7 coat  
 3 umbrella                                8 watch  
 4 skirt                                      9 shirt  
 5 suitcase                                10 hat  
 6 boots

**4.5**

morning	night
<i>get dressed</i>	<i>get undressed</i>
<i>or put your clothes on</i>	<i>or take your clothes off</i>

**4.6** *Possible answer:*

I'm wearing a blue T-shirt and black trousers. I've got white shoes on. I'm wearing a watch, three rings and a pair of glasses.

**Unit 5**

- 5.1** 2 tall                                    5 young  
 3 slim / thin                              6 fat / overweight  
 4 fair                                        7 elderly

- 5.2** 2 Is Elena's hair blonde / fair?  
 3 Is Mike's hair long?  
 4 Are your parents elderly? (Are your parents old? is a less polite question)  
 5 Is his sister pretty / beautiful?  
 6 Why is Sara so thin?

**5.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 Jeff has short fair hair and a beard.  
 3 Anika's got dark skin and dark hair.  
 4 Stefan's hair is long and he has a moustache.

- 5.4** 2 What does your teacher look like?  
 3 How much do you weigh? / How heavy are you?  
 4 How old is your mother?  
 5 How tall is your sister?  
 6 What do your parents look like?

**5.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 She's tall and slim with blonde hair.  
 3 I'm 75 kilos. I'm not overweight but I'm not thin.  
 4 She's middle-aged. She's 49.  
 5 She's very tall for her age. She's 1 metre 58.  
 6 They're medium height. My mother has long dark hair and my father has fair hair and a beard and a moustache.

## Over to you

Possible answers:

Joanna: Joanna is tall. She has long black hair and brown eyes. She's very pretty.

Kevin: Kevin is medium height. He has fair hair and a beard. His eyes are blue. He's average-looking.

My mother: My mother is short with grey hair. She has green eyes. She's beautiful.

## Unit 6

- 6.1** 2 I feel sick. / I don't feel very well. / I feel ill.  
3 feel ill.  
4 I've got toothache.  
5 a cold

**6.2**

illness	treatment
a headache	take an aspirin
toothache	go to the dentist
a heart attack	go to hospital
a cold	go to bed with a hot drink

- 6.3** 2 cholera                      4 hay fever  
3 asthma                        5 cancer / heart attacks

**6.4** Possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, and not many sweet things.
- 2 I like / love swimming and cycling.
- 3 Yes, I feel stressed when I have exams.
- 4 Yes, I had an operation once / I broke my leg, etc. ('Be in hospital' means you are ill, you are a patient. 'Be in a hospital' can just mean you are visiting someone.)
- 5 Yes, I start sneezing as soon as I get near flowers or grass.

## Unit 7

**7.1** Possible answers:

- 2 I hate cowboy films.
- 3 I like flying.
- 4 I like tea.
- 5 I don't like football.
- 6 I love cats.
- 7 I like cars.
- 8 I don't like jazz music.

**7.2** Possible answers:

- 2 I prefer cats to dogs.
- 3 I prefer sightseeing to sunbathing.
- 4 I prefer cars to bikes.
- 5 I prefer strawberry to chocolate ice cream.
- 6 I prefer watching sport to doing sport.

**7.3** Possible answers:

- 2 I hope (that) the lesson ends soon.
- 3 I want some food.
- 4 I hope (that) my friend feels better soon.
- 5 I want to go to bed.
- 6 I want to cry.
- 7 I hope (that) it gets hotter soon.
- 8 I want him / her to feel / be happy again soon.



## Unit 9

- 9.1** 2 around 5 actually (really is also possible)  
 3 really 6 around  
 4 else

- 9.2** 2 mind 3 Let's 4 Be careful 5 anyway

- 9.3** 2 Look out! 5 Hurry up!  
 3 What a pity! 6 Well done!  
 4 It's up to you.

- 9.4** VERA: We need to celebrate. I got a new job!  
 LUKE: Well **done!** How about **going** out for a meal this evening?  
 VERA: Great! **Let's** go to that Italian restaurant. Or do you prefer the Chinese one?  
 LUKE: I don't **mind**. I like the Italian one but it's very expensive.  
 VERA: Oh, it **doesn't** matter.  
 LUKE: OK. Why don't we **go** to the Italian restaurant and then we could go to the cinema afterwards? Your new job needs a special celebration.  
 VERA: **I** agree. And I'd love to see that film with George Clooney. Would you?  
 LUKE: **Absolutely!**

## Unit 10

- 10.1** 2 Pasta; pizza (in either order) 5 meat  
 3 potatoes 6 hot dog  
 4 fish and chips

### 10.2

fruit	vegetables
pineapple	beans
grapes	onions
apple	carrot
pear	garlic
	mushrooms

- 10.3** 2 strawberry 5 potatoes  
 3 peas 6 tomatoes  
 4 apple

- 10.4** 2 beer 5 fruit juice  
 3 milk 6 mineral water  
 4 coffee

- 10.5** 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c

### 10.6 Possible answer:

My favourite foods are pizza, fish, strawberries and pineapple.  
 My favourite drinks are tea, coffee and fruit juice.  
 They are quite good for you.



- 12.6**
- |                       |        |                  |
|-----------------------|--------|------------------|
| 2 10.30 (for example) | 6 off  | 10 shower / bath |
| 3 undressed           | 7 fall | 11 clean         |
| 4 get                 | 8 wake | 12 get           |
| 5 for                 | 9 up   |                  |

### Unit 13

- 13.1**
- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 2 a sofa         | 6 a hi-fi          |
| 3 a coffee table | 7 a carpet or rug  |
| 4 a picture      | 8 a remote control |
| 5 a light switch |                    |

- 13.2**
- |     |     |
|-----|-----|
| 2 e | 5 d |
| 3 f | 6 a |
| 4 c |     |

- 13.3**
- I don't often listen **to** the radio.
  - We need some more **bookshelves** in this room.
  - I watched television all evening yesterday. (not 'at')
  - It's dark now. Please **close** the curtains.
  - Liam has some very nice **furniture** in his house.

**13.4**

F	T	A	L	W	X	A	R	O	C	F	Y	D
E	R	L	S	O	C	K	E	T	U	I	I	U
D	K	A	G	L	N	T	B	C	R	I	E	F
R	E	M	O	T	E	C	O	N	T	R	O	L
A	Y	P	F	C	H	A	I	R	A	P	J	I
D	E	C	H	K	I	R	G	T	I	R	U	G
I	B	O	O	K	F	P	S	I	N	E	B	H
O	G	F	E	A	I	E	L	H	S	C	R	T
S	U	A	T	L	E	T	V	C	A	E	U	O

### Over to you

*Possible answer:*

In my living room there is not much furniture. There is a table, a TV, a desk, a sofa and two armchairs. The walls are white and there are some pictures on them. I like to relax in the living room. In the evening I watch TV there, or listen to music.

### Unit 14

- 14.1**
- A doctor works in a hospital (or a clinic, or a surgery).
  - A waiter works in a restaurant (or a café).
  - A secretary works in an office.
  - A shop assistant works in a shop.
  - A hairdresser works in a beauty salon (or a hairdresser's).

- 14.2**
- engineer
  - taxi driver
  - nurse
  - mechanic
  - secretary



## Unit 17

**17.1** 2 a 4 b  
3 e 5 c

**17.2** 2 charger 5 SIM card  
3 call 6 phone case  
4 camera

**17.3** 2 takes 4 called  
3 downloaded 5 left

**17.4** 2 swipe 3 saved

**17.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I don't use a PIN to lock my phone.
- 2 I have a phone case. It's yellow and has a smiley face on it.
- 3 The apps I use most often are WhatsApp and Google maps.
- 4 I save all my photos, but my memory gets full and I have to delete them sometimes.
- 5 I took a selfie when I went on holiday two months ago.
- 6 I prefer to text people because if you call, it may not be a good time for people to answer.

## Unit 18

**18.1** 2 going 3 time 4 by 5 send

**18.2** 2 a package holiday (or package tour) 4 a walking holiday  
3 a coach tour 5 a winter holiday

**18.3** Possible answers:

	you can take a lot of luggage	very fast	cheap	you see a lot as you travel	relaxing
ferry	✓✓		✓	✓✓	✓✓
car	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓✓	✓✓✓	✓
flight		✓✓✓	✓	✓	✓✓

**18.4** 2 passport 5 rucksack  
3 camera 6 tickets  
4 luggage (or suitcase)

**18.5** 2 a visa 4 a rucksack  
3 a plane 5 a suitcase

**18.6** 2 nightlife 3 local 4 postcard

## Unit 19

**19.1** 2 toy shop 5 gift shop  
3 butcher 6 baker  
4 newsagent

**19.2** 2 a supermarket 5 a bookshop  
3 the post office (or a newsagent) 6 a department store (or perhaps a supermarket)  
4 a gift shop

**19.3** 2 ground floor 5 first floor 8 basement  
3 fourth floor 6 second floor 9 third floor  
4 basement 7 second floor 10 fourth floor

- 19.4** 2 cash  
3 (a £20) note  
4 a credit or a debit card  
5 change  
6 a shop that sells meat  
7 the floor above the ground floor (in a British building)  
8 a shop that sells newspapers and magazines  
9 the floor under the ground floor

- 19.5** 2 Closed            4 Push  
3 Pull                5 Open

- 19.6** 1 cost  
2 pay  
3 (carrier) bag

## Unit 20

- 20.1** 2 e    3 f    4 a    5 b    6 c

- 20.2** 2 reviews                    5 delivery  
3 add                            6 credit card  
4 delete

- 20.3** 2 order number  
3 post code  
4 next day

- 20.4** 2 E    3 B    4 C    5 D    6 A

**20.5** *Possible answers*

- 1 Yes, a lot of people shop online in my country.
- 2 Yes, I've bought clothes and games.
- 3 Yes, I sometimes read the reviews before I buy things, but it depends what I buy.

## Unit 21

- 21.1** 2 shower                    5 hairdryer                    8 lift  
3 TV                            6 sea  
4 phone                        7 key

- 21.2** 2 a    3 h    4 f    5 b    6 g    7 c    8 e

- 21.3** 1 At **reception** you can order **room** service.  
2 We'd like a **double** room with a **view** of the garden, please.  
3 The lift is **over** there. Take it to the second **floor**.  
4 Please **fill** in this **form**.  
5 I'd like a **wake-up call** at 7.30 and I'd like to **have** breakfast in my room, please.  
6 I have a **reservation** for a **single** room with a bathroom.  
7 Can I **have** the bill, please? I'll **check** it now.  
8 I'm leaving today. Can I **exchange** some dollars here before I **check** out?

**21.4** *Possible answers:*

- Can I have breakfast in my room, please?  
Can I have / check my bill, please?  
Can I have a double room for tonight, please?  
Can I have some help with my luggage? or Can I leave my luggage here, please?

**21.5** Possible answers:

- 1 It costs about £100.
- 2 00 44 (from e.g. France)
- 3 Breakfast is usually from 7 to 10.
- 4 I think a TV is most important for me.

**Unit 22**

**22.1** Possible answers:

- 2 restaurant
- 3 fast food restaurant
- 4 café
- 5 bar / pub

**22.2** Possible answers:

- 2 café - Jim's Corner Café
- 3 take-away - Corner Kebabs
- 4 restaurant - The Taj Mahal
- 5 bar - The Red Lion

**22.3** 2 curry 3 salad 4 pie 5 steak

- 22.4** WAITER: Are you ready **to** order?  
CUSTOMER: Yes, **I'd** like vegetable soup and steak, please.  
WAITER: **How** would you like your steak? Rare, medium or **well-done**?  
CUSTOMER: Rare, please.  
WAITER: What **would you** like to drink?  
CUSTOMER: **An** orange juice, please.

**22.5** Your own answers

**22.6** Possible answers:

- 1 I'd choose mixed salad, vegetable curry and ice cream.
- 2 Vegetarians can eat soup of the day, mixed salad and vegetable curry.
- 3 I like eating out very much.
- 4 I go to a restaurant two or three times a month.

**Unit 23**

- 23.1** 2 swimming 3 judo / karate 4 sailing 5 volleyball 6 motor racing

- 23.2** 2 badminton 3 table tennis 4 snowboarding 5 baseball 6 basketball 7 skiing 8 American football

- 23.3** 2 Do you play football?  
3 Do you do any sports?  
4 Do you go swimming? / like swimming? / swim?  
5 What is your favourite sport?  
6 Where do people play rugby?

**23.4** Possible answers:

- 1 swimming, skiing, table tennis, tennis, kayaking
- 2 in a swimming pool, in the mountains, at home, at a sports centre, on a river
- 3 I like swimming, kayaking and table tennis.
- 4 I don't like tennis.
- 5 I'd like to go sailing.

## Unit 24

- 24.1** 2 science fiction      5 cartoon                      7 thriller  
3 horror                      6 romantic comedy      8 musical  
4 action

**24.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 romantic comedy - *My Best Friend's Wedding*  
3 thriller - *Psycho*  
4 western - *High Noon*  
5 musical - *High School Musical*  
6 cartoon - *Shrek*

**24.3**

    T H R I L L E R  
    H O R R O R  
    C O M E D Y  
    A C T I O N  
S C I E N C E F I C T I O N  
W E S T E R N  
M U S I C A L  
    C A R T O O N

- 24.4** 2 watched (some people say 'saw a DVD')  
3 played  
4 in  
5 film stars  
6 director

**24.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I like romantic comedies.  
2 My favourite film star is Nicole Kidman.  
3 I prefer going to the cinema.  
4 The last film I saw was *Jason Bourne*.  
5 You can look in the newspaper, go online or phone the cinema.

## Unit 25

- 25.1** 2 He's gardening.                                      5 She's using the Internet. / She's using the computer.  
3 He's reading a newspaper.                              6 He's listening to music.  
4 He's cooking.

- 25.2** 2 reading                      5 have / invite                      8 see / watch  
3 talk                              6 play                                      9 grows  
4 have                              7 download                              10 watch

**25.3** *Possible answers:*

- 1 We talk, or we have a meal, or we listen to music, etc.  
2 My best friend sometimes comes to stay. / My cousins sometimes come to stay, etc.  
3 I like novels, and I read a newspaper every day.  
4 I talk to them on the phone every day.  
5 I don't have a garden. I live in a flat.  
6 I chat to my friends online once or twice a week.  
7 I often download music or films from the Internet.  
8 *The Sims* is my favourite computer game.  
9 I use headphones when I want to listen to music on a train.

**25.4** Possible answers:

gardening	2
cooking	4
reading	5
using the Internet	5
watching DVDs	4
listening to music	5
doing nothing	1
chatting online	2

**Unit 26**

**26.1** 2 musician    3 musical    4 music    5 musical    6 musicians

- 26.2**
- 2 Abigail plays the cello in an orchestra.
  - 3 Noah loves playing the drums.
  - 4 Emily is having a piano lesson.
  - 5 Mason is a very good trumpet-player.
  - 6 Ella plays the clarinet every evening.
  - 7 William plays the guitar.
  - 8 Emma is learning the flute. She will be a good flute-player one day.
  - 9 Madison is a violinist.
  - 10 Emily wants to be a pianist.

**26.3** 2 a    3 c    4 b    5 c

**26.4** Possible answers:

- 1 I download music about once a month.
- 2 I like the violin best.
- 3 Yes, I play the violin and the guitar.
- 4 I would like to learn the piano.
- 5 I like classical music and pop music!

**Unit 27**

**27.1** 2 Brazil                      5 Japan  
3 Spain                        6 Thailand  
4 Morocco

- 27.2**
- 2 Rome is the capital of Italy.
  - 3 Canberra is the capital of Australia.
  - 4 Bogotá is the capital of Colombia.
  - 5 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
  - 6 London is the capital of the UK.
  - 7 Berlin is the capital of Germany.
  - 8 Warsaw is the capital of Poland.
  - 9 Buenos Aires is the capital of Argentina.
  - 10 Madrid is the capital of Spain.

- 27.3**
- 2 In Mexico, Spain and Chile they speak Spanish but in Brazil they speak Portuguese.
  - 3 In Austria, Germany and Switzerland they speak German but in Italy they speak Italian.
  - 4 In Morocco, Egypt and Saudi Arabia they speak Arabic but in China they speak Chinese.
  - 5 In Switzerland, Canada and France they speak French but in Scotland they speak English.

**27.4** 2 Thai                            7 Peruvian  
3 German                        8 Chinese  
4 Egyptian                      9 Australian  
5 Argentinian                10 Polish  
6 Spanish

**27.5** Check your answers with your teacher.

## Over to you

The Sahara is in Africa.  
The Amazon is in South America.  
Wagga Wagga is in Australasia.  
The Volga is in Europe.  
Mount Kilimanjaro is in Africa.  
The Mississippi is in North America.  
Mount Fuji is in Asia.  
Lake Titicaca is in South America.

## Unit 28

**28.1** 2 f    3 d    4 g    5 c    6 e    7 b

**28.2** 3 It is windy in La Paz.  
4 It is cloudy in Paris.  
5 It is foggy in Tashkent.  
6 It is sunny in Seoul. / The sun is shining in Seoul.  
7 It is snowing in Washington. / It's snowy in Washington.

**28.3** 2 rains                      6 degrees  
3 weather                    7 storm  
4 snows                      8 cold  
5 lightning

**28.4** *Possible answers:*

2 It is usually 20 degrees in summer and 0 (zero) degrees in winter.  
3 There are sometimes thunderstorms in August.  
4 It is not usually very wet in spring.  
5 We almost never have hurricanes.  
6 Summer is usually warm but we can have thunderstorms.

**28.5** *Possible answers:*

2 sunny weather - I like to go to the beach / for a walk / lie in the sun.  
3 a rainy day - I don't like to go out / I don't like to do sports.  
4 snow - I like to walk in the snow / I like to go skiing.  
5 a windy day - I like to go windsurfing / I don't like to go out / I love to go for a walk.

## Unit 29

**29.1** 2 at the tourist information office                      6 at the (train / railway) station  
3 at the bank    7 at / in the shopping centre  
4 in / at the car park    8 at the post office  
5 at the museum

**29.2** 2 Exit                                      4 Please do not walk on the grass  
3 No smoking                          5 Entrance

**29.3** 2 The bus **station / stop** is over there **on** the left.  
3 For the Town Hall **take** the number 14 bus.  
4 **There** is a post office on the other **side** of the road.  
5 You can find a cash **machine** at the bank in High Street.  
6 We can get a map of the town at the tourist **information** office.  
7 Can you tell me the **way** to the railway **station**, please?  
8 **Excuse** me. I'm looking **for** a car park.

- 29.4** 2 town hall                      5 railway station                      8 post office  
 3 library                              6 pedestrian area                      9 shops  
 4 car park                            7 cash machine                      10 bus stop

**29.5** *Possible answer:*

Go left out of the tourist information office and take the first left. Then take the second left, which is Market Street. The shopping centre is on the left.

**29.6** *Your own answers*

**Unit 30**

- 30.1** 2 forest                      6 farm                      10 fields  
 3 village                      7 river                      11 lake  
 4 hills                      8 country road  
 5 wood                      9 path

- 30.2** 2 cottage      3 village      4 town

- 30.3** 2 d      3 e      4 b      5 a

- 30.4** 2 He loves nature.  
 3 She wants to live in the country.  
 4 They are interested in wildlife.

**30.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 There are no hills or mountains.  
 3 There's a big lake and two small rivers.  
 4 There are a lot of villages and some small towns.  
 5 There are a lot of small farms and a few very big ones in the countryside.  
 6 There are some good paths for walking near where I live.  
 7 You can't go skiing because there are no hills (and there's usually no snow).  
 8 You can see a lot of beautiful wildlife.

**Unit 31**

**31.1** *Possible answers:*

- 2 giraffe                      7 Chickens / Hens  
 3 Parrots; hens                      8 Rabbits  
 4 Tigers; lions                      9 feed; give  
 5 horse; elephant                      10 take  
 6 Fish; birds

- 31.2** sheep      lamb      lamb  
 cow      beef      calf  
 hen      chicken      chick  
 pig      pork      piglet

**31.3** *Possible answers:*

- 1 Lions, tigers, monkeys, snakes, dogs and cats eat meat.  
 2 Cows, sheep, pigs, goats, parrots (for feathers) and snakes (for snakeskin) give us things that we wear.  
 3 Chickens / hens, tortoises, parrots, snakes and fish produce their babies in eggs.  
 4 We can eat cows, sheep, pigs, chickens / hens, goats, horses and fish (and you may think of some other animals that people eat too).

- 31.4**    **Across**                      **Down**  
 3 cats                                  1 *parrot*  
 6 lion                                   2 monkey  
 7 horse                                4 sheep  
 8 elephant                            5 tiger  
    9 hen

**31.5** Write down the number you remembered. Try again tomorrow and write down how many you remember then.

**Unit 32**

**32.1** 2 d    3 a    4 f    5 c    6 g    7 b

- 32.2** 2 True.  
 3 False. Planes take off at the beginning of a journey. / Planes land at the end of a journey.  
 4 False. You need a boarding card to get on a plane.  
 5 False. Hiring a car is not the same as buying a car.  
 6 True.

**32.3** *Possible answer:*

At Cambridge train station take a number 5 bus. The stop is just outside the station. Get off the bus at the hospital, cross the road and take the first road on the left. My house is on the corner of the street and it has a red door.

- 32.4**    **Across**                      **Down**  
 3 map                                    1 *timetable*  
 6 helicopter                          2 taxi  
 7 bus                                     3 motorcycle  
 8 petrol                                 4 platform  
    5 train

**Over to you**

Keep the cards and test yourself every day. If you find this useful, write cards for words from other units of the book.

**Unit 33**

- 33.1** 2 Christmas                      5 Valentine's Day  
 3 Bonfire Night                    6 New Year's Eve / Hogmanay  
 4 Easter

**33.2**

C	H	I	C	K	E	N	F	D	K	N
R	Y	O	R	K	S	H	I	R	E	P
O	C	V	O	M	T	R	S	M	V	U
A	Q	E	W	A	A	T	H	X	L	D
S	M	V	C	S	H	G	E	Q	L	D
T	P	O	T	A	T	O	E	S	C	I
D	F	G	B	L	B	K	U	V	U	N
X	Z	O	E	A	P	I	V	Z	R	G
A	N	D	E	C	H	I	P	S	R	B
C	W	Q	F	T	I	K	K	A	Y	J

**33.3** 2 India 4 No. They eat it with their main course (with roast beef).  
3 curry 5 in the oven

**33.4** 2 a state secondary school 4 a state primary school  
3 a nursery school 5 a private secondary school

**33.5** *Answers in 2016:*

1 Theresa May 2 Houses of Parliament 3 Queen Elizabeth II

### Unit 34

**34.1** 2 a murderer 5 a mugger  
3 a shoplifter / robber 6 a drug dealer  
4 a burglar

**34.2** 2 arrested 6 innocent  
3 vandals 7 terrorists  
4 fine 8 prison  
5 burglaries / burglars

**34.3** 2 False - vandals destroy things 3 True 4 False - a car thief steals cars 5 True

**34.4** 2 stole 3 robbed 4 stolen 5 stole 6 stolen

### Over to you

*Possible answers:*

- 2 The student should pay a fine and return the book.
- 3 The woman should go to prison.
- 4 The terrorists should go to prison for a long time.
- 5 The woman should pay a fine and the police should take her car away.
- 6 The teenager should work in the park and plant new trees or pay a fine.

### Unit 35

**35.1** 2 is 6 online  
3 documentary 7 change  
4 nature 8 interview  
5 teenage

**35.2** 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 d 6 c

**35.3** 2 a journalist 6 an advert / advertisement  
3 an evening (news)paper 7 a (TV) channel  
4 a cartoon 8 an interview  
5 a nature programme

**35.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I always read an evening newspaper.
- 2 Yes, I usually read the main stories in the morning.
- 3 I like news magazines.
- 4 I'll probably watch my favourite soap on TV tonight.
- 5 My favourite TV channel is BBC1.
- 6 I watch about an hour of TV every day.
- 7 I like talk shows and reality TV.
- 8 I watch TV online once or twice a week.
- 9 No, I don't like watching adverts on TV.

## Unit 36

### 36.1 *Possible answers:*

- |                                     |                         |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 2 The computer has crashed.         | 6 He's cut his hand.    |
| 3 The cup is broken.                | 7 The room is untidy.   |
| 4 The coffee machine isn't working. | 8 She is late for work. |
| 5 She has too much work (to do).    |                         |

### 36.2 *Possible answers:*

- cut finger / hands / knees
- untidy room / desk / hair
- late for school / an appointment / a concert
- a camera / microwave / fridge that isn't working
- too much work / rain / wind

### 36.3 *Possible answers:*

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 2 dying plants                        | 2 |
| 3 a cut finger                        | 2 |
| 4 being late for work or school       | 1 |
| 5 a colleague or friend in a bad mood | 2 |
| 6 a coffee machine that isn't working | 1 |
| 7 a broken washing machine            | 1 |
| 8 an untidy bedroom                   | 3 |
| 9 a row with a friend                 | 1 |
| 10 your computer crashes              | 1 |
| 11 lost keys                          | 1 |
| 12 too much work                      | 3 |

### 36.4 *Possible answers:*

- too much work - get an assistant
- a colleague in a bad mood - pay no attention
- a crashed computer - get a technician
- a photocopier that is out of order - repair the photocopier
- a coffee machine that isn't working - drink water

### 36.5 *Possible answers:*

- My DVD player didn't work.
- My brother lost his credit card.
- I cut my knee.
- My cousin broke a glass.

## Unit 37

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 2 car crash  | 6 forest fire |
| 3 flood      | 7 hurricane   |
| 4 war        | 8 traffic jam |
| 5 earthquake | 9 snowstorm   |

- |     |     |
|-----|-----|
| 2 e | 6 b |
| 3 f | 7 h |
| 4 a | 8 d |
| 5 g |     |

- 37.3** 2 a traffic jam            6 the rush hour  
 3 crowded                    7 hungry  
 4 a car crash                8 a forest fire  
 5 unemployed

**37.4** *Possible answers:*

- 2 forest fire, traffic jam            4 hurricane, snowstorm, flood  
 3 strike, war                            5 poor, hungry, homeless, unemployed

- 37.5** 2 strike                                    6 homeless  
 3 War                                        7 rush hour  
 4 car crash                                8 polluted  
 5 earthquakes; snowstorms

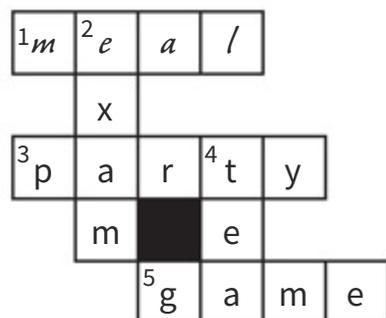
**Unit 38**

**38.1** *Possible answers:*

- 2 lesson  
 3 football / tennis / squash / rugby / darts / chess / cards  
 4 party  
 5 shower / bath / wash  
 6 exam  
 7 meeting  
 8 coffee / cup of coffee / cup of tea / drink  
 9 swim  
 10 dinner / a meal / supper / something to eat

- 38.2** 2 Scarlett has gone to the hairdresser's to **have her hair cut**.  
 3 That computer game looks great. Can I have a **go**?  
 4 I want to have **a word** with my teacher after the lesson.  
 5 Mum didn't have the **time** to go to the shop today.  
 6 They **don't have** or they **haven't got** any cake in the café today.

**38.3**



**38.4** *Possible answers:*

- 2 Have a good journey! / Have a good time!  
 3 Have you got a cold?  
 4 Can I have a look?

**38.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I've got one brother and two sisters.  
 2 I have them at 9.30 every day.  
 3 I have a salad and a cup of tea.  
 4 Not every day, but I have to go on Wednesday and Friday.  
 5 I've got two.  
 6 Yes, we always have a good time in our English classes.

## Unit 39

- 39.1**
- 2 The Sharps are going to the beach.
  - 3 Zoe and Penelope are going shopping / to the shopping centre.
  - 4 Asad is going to Cairo.
  - 5 Lars is going fishing.

- 39.2**
- 2 This year Victoria is going to pass her driving test.
  - 3 This year Victoria is going to learn Spanish.
  - 4 This year Victoria is going to watch less TV.
  - 5 This year Victoria is going to keep her room tidy.

- 39.3** *Possible answers:*

I sometimes go swimming.  
I never go skiing.  
I sometimes go dancing.  
I never go fishing.  
I always go sightseeing.

- 39.4** *Possible answers:*

From Cambridge, trains go to London, Norwich, Ely and Peterborough. Buses go to Oxford, to Heathrow and to Scotland from Cambridge. From Cambridge roads go to London, to Huntingdon and to the sea.

- 39.5**
- 2 Mum is **going shopping** this afternoon.
  - 3 ✓
  - 4 I love Paris. Did you **go there** last year?
  - 5 Alexei is **going home** at 4 o'clock.
  - 6 We always go to the same café. Let's **go somewhere** different today.
  - 7 ✓
  - 8 I **go swimming** every Sunday morning.
  - 9 We're going **sightseeing** today.
  - 10 Jo went **up** to the top of the hill. / Jo went down to the **bottom** of the hill.
  - 11 Let's go **fishing** today.
  - 12 She went out **of** the shop.
  - 13 ✓
  - 14 Would you like to **go home** now?

## Unit 40

- 40.1**
- 2 What are the girls doing? They're playing tennis.
  - 3 What is the dog doing? It's sleeping.
  - 4 What is the man in the house doing? He's washing up. / He's doing the washing-up.
  - 5 What is the woman doing? She's reading a book.
  - 6 What is the man in the garden doing? He's gardening. / He's doing the gardening.

- 40.2** *Questions and possible answers:*

- 2 What does Lee Atkins do? He's a teacher.
- 3 What does Sophie Hicks do? She's a doctor.
- 4 What do Cooper and Hailey do? They're students.

- 40.3**
- 2 What did Lara Brown do? She went to a meeting.
  - 3 What did Sophie Hicks do? She talked to five patients.
  - 4 What did Cooper and Hailey do? They wrote an essay.

**40.4** Possible answers:

I often do the washing-up.  
My husband usually does the washing.  
My son has to do his homework every day.  
My daughter does her exercises every morning.  
I hate doing the housework.  
I love doing the gardening.  
We do business with Eastern Europe.  
I always do my best.

- 40.5** ANNA: Where did you **go** on your holidays? To Wales?  
PAVEL: No, we **didn't** go to Wales this year. We went to Scotland.  
ANNA: **Does** your grandmother **live** in Scotland?  
PAVEL: No, she **doesn't** but my uncle **does**.

## Unit 41

- 41.1** 2 made                      5 made / have made / 've made  
3 making                    6 making  
4 make

- 41.2** 2 Long lessons always make me (feel) tired.  
3 She was horrible to me; it made me (feel) angry.  
4 It's a lovely song. It makes me (feel) happy.  
5 That meal was horrible. It made me (feel) sick.

- 41.3** 2 She's making tea.                      5 The children are making a mess.  
3 The little boys are making a noise.      6 She is making her bed.  
4 They're making a video / a film.

- 41.4** 2 Can I **take** a photo of you?  
3 He's 25 but he never **does** his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.  
4 Are you **doing / taking** an exam tomorrow?  
5 Have you **done** your homework yet?

## Unit 42

- 42.1** 2 back (home)              5 see  
3 into                        6 out of / back from / home from  
4 from

- 42.2** 2 Come here!  
3 We're going to a party. Do you want to come along?  
4 I come from France.

- 42.3** 2 came      3 comes      4 Are; coming      5 comes

**42.4** Possible answers:

1 I usually come home at five-thirty.  
2 I'm from / I come from Scotland / Jamaica / Pakistan / Latvia / Bolivia, etc.  
3 I sit down and talk to my friends / take out my books.

## Over to you

*Possible meanings and example sentences:*

- 1 Meaning: 'come round' can mean 'come to someone's house or flat'.  
Example: Do you want to come round this afternoon for a coffee?
- 2 Meaning: 'come across' can mean 'meet or find for the first time'.  
Example: I come across lots of new words when I read English books.
- 3 Meaning: 'come up' can mean 'be mentioned or occur in conversation'.  
Example: When new words come up in class, the teacher tells us the meaning.

## Unit 43

### 43.1 *Possible answers:*

- 1 It takes me 10 minutes to get to university.
- 2 It takes me 30 minutes to go from my house to the nearest railway station.
- 3 It takes me 20 minutes to get to my best friend's house.
- 4 It takes me an hour to do one unit of this book.

### 43.2

- 2 take the train
- 3 take a course
- 4 take some water

### 43.3

- 2 You can / have to take a taxi.
- 3 He takes the bus.
- 4 They take the underground.

### 43.4

- 2 I take my / an umbrella.
- 3 I take my passport.
- 4 I take my notebook and pen.
- 5 I take my mobile (phone).

### 43.5 *Possible answer:*

It took me about an hour.

## Unit 44

### 44.1

2 bring    3 bring    4 Take    5 take    6 bring

### 44.2

- 2 e You must take your passport when you travel.
- 3 b Come to my house and bring your guitar.
- 4 a Go to the post office and take these letters, please.
- 5 d Everybody is going to bring food to the party.

### 44.3

1 *brings*; brought    2 brought    3 take    4 take; bring

### 44.4

- 1 *take*; bring it back
- 2 brought me back
- 3 take; bring it back

### 44.5 *Possible answer:*

I always bring / take my vocabulary notebook, a pen and my coursebook to the lesson.

## Unit 45

### 45.1

2 c sick    4 b dark  
3 a hot    5 c wet

### 45.2

- 2 When the sun comes up it gets light.
- 3 She's in hospital but she's getting better.
- 4 It's raining! I'm getting wet!
- 5 Please close the window. I'm getting cold.

- 45.3** 2 a doctor 6 a taxi / a bus / a train  
 3 a drink 7 a job  
 4 a pen / pencil and paper 8 an umbrella / a raincoat  
 5 a newspaper

- 45.4** 2 gets to 3 get to 4 gets(back) 5 get back / home

**45.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 In Britain, people usually get married when they are 20 to 30 years old.
- 2 People usually get married at the weekend, mostly on Saturday. April, May and June are very popular months (spring and summer).
- 3 I get home at about 5 o'clock. I get there by car.

**Unit 46**

- 46.1** 2 d 3 g 4 f 5 b 6 h 7 e 8 a

- 46.2** 2 off 3 on; up 4 off 5 off 6 off 7 on 8 on

- 46.3** 2 He is putting on his shoes. 3 A plane is taking off. 4 She is turning on the oven.

- 46.4** 2 took off 3 went on 4 went off 5 turned down

**Unit 47**

- 47.1** 2 She washes (the / her) clothes every Saturday. 4 He watches TV / television every evening.  
 3 He cleans the house / his flat every weekend. 5 She goes for a walk every Sunday.

**47.2** *Possible question:*

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 2 How often do you go for a walk? | 6 How often do you phone your best friend? |
| 3 How do you go to work?          | 7 When do you clean your room?             |
| 4 When do you have dinner?        | 8 What time do you have a shower?          |
| 5 How do you come home from work? |  |

**47.3** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I usually wake up at 7 o'clock.
- 2 I go to the bathroom and have a shower.
- 3 I usually have tea and toast for breakfast.
- 4 I go to work by car.
- 5 I usually have a cup of coffee at 11 o'clock.
- 6 I usually come home at about 6 pm.
- 7 I usually make dinner at 7 o'clock.
- 8 In the evenings I normally watch TV or go for a walk.
- 9 Sometimes I write one or two emails or listen to the radio.
- 10 I usually go to bed at 11 o'clock.

**Unit 48**

- 48.1** 2 told 3 said 4 tell; said 5 said 6 told

- 48.2** 2 How do you say 'tree' in German?  
 3 Excuse me, can you tell me the time?  
 4 I just want to say goodbye (to you).  
 5 Can you tell me when the exam is?  
 6 Can you answer the phone, please? / Can you tell them I'm busy / I'm cooking?

- 48.3** 2 h answer the door  
 3 g ask for the bill  
 4 a reply to an email  
 5 f tell someone a joke  
 6 e talk to a friend  
 7 b ask someone to help you  
 8 c speak Japanese

We can also say 'answer an email', but not 'reply to the door'!

- 48.4** 2 Can we have the bill, please?  
 3 Happy New Year!  
 4 Tell me a story before I go to sleep. Please!

## Unit 49

- 49.1** 2 danced            4 run                    6 fell                    8 walk  
 3 swims                5 climbing            7 jumped; swam
- 49.2** 2 drives                5 take; go by        8 take  
 3 takes                6 ride  
 4 drives                7 ride

*Note:* You can also use 'go by' with all these forms of transport (but without 'the' or 'a'), i.e. you can go to work by bicycle, go home by underground / taxi, etc.

- 49.3** *Possible answers:*  
 salt, pepper, bread, butter, water, sauce, salad

- 49.4** 2 Maria drove her grandmother to the city yesterday.  
 3 Charlie flew to Madrid yesterday.  
 4 I took a taxi home from the station yesterday.  
 5 Bella fell when she rode her bike yesterday.  
 6 Adrian missed the 7.30 bus to school yesterday.  
 7 The taxi driver helped the old lady to carry her luggage to the train yesterday.  
 8 Madeline danced very well yesterday.

- 49.5** *Possible answers:*  
 2 I ride my bike once a week.  
 3 I swim in the sea once a year. I swim in a pool once a week.  
 4 I go somewhere by plane once a year.  
 5 I drive my car every day.  
 6 I go dancing once a week.  
 7 I never go climbing.  
 8 I take a taxi once or twice a year.

## Unit 50

- 50.1** 2 and                    6 if  
 3 before                7 or  
 4 so                      8 when  
 5 because

## 50.2 Possible sentences:

Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav after he moved to London. / *Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav after they decided to start a business together.*  
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav and they had two sons. / *Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav and they decided to start a business together.*  
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav because she loved him. / *Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav because he was a pop star.*  
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav before he moved to London. / *Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav before they decided to start a business together.*  
Annabelle will marry Aarav because she loves him.  
Annabelle will marry Aarav before he moves to London.  
Annabelle will marry Aarav but she doesn't love him.  
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav if he moved to London.  
Annabelle will marry Aarav or she won't marry anyone.  
Annabelle agreed to marry Aarav so he moved to London.  
Annabelle will marry Aarav when he moves to London.

- 50.3 2 as well / also (too is also possible but it is better to use a different word as too is already in the sentence)  
3 than  
4 like  
5 only

## 50.4 Possible answers:

I only play tennis in the summer.  
My sister plays the piano better than I do.  
My brother swims like a fish.  
I like listening to music and I like reading also.  
I like going skiing too.  
I often go skiing with the children and sometimes my husband comes as well.

## 50.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I'm learning English because I enjoy it.
- 2 I'll learn more English if I do all the exercises in this book.
- 3 I'm learning English and I'm also studying Spanish.
- 4 I started learning English when I was ten.
- 5 I can speak some English, so it's OK on holiday in the UK.
- 6 I'll learn more English but sometimes it's difficult.

## Unit 51

- 51.1 2 a century 3 a fortnight 4 an hour 5 a week

51.2 Thirty days has September,  
April, June and November.  
All the rest have thirty-one.  
Except for February  
Which has twenty-eight days  
And twenty-nine in each leap year.

This is a traditional rhyme which people use to help them remember the number of days of the month. It means that:  
September, April, June and November have 30 days. The other months have 31 days except for February which has 28 days and 29 days in a leap year.

- 51.3** 2 August                      6 January                      10 September  
 3 October                      7 April                      11 Tuesday  
 4 Saturday                      8 Friday                      12 November  
 5 Wednesday                      9 February

- 51.4** 2 T F S (the first letters of the days of the week)  
 3 A S O N D (the first letters of the months)

**51.5** I'm going to a party on **Saturday** for Valentina's birthday. Her birthday is on **Thursday** but she wanted to have the party **at** the weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think **June** is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues **in** the summer. My birthday is in **winter** and it's too cold to eat outside!

- 51.6** 1 15    2 Tuesday (or Wednesday)    3 300    4 July    5 120  
 6–12 It is not possible to give answers to questions 6 to 12. Check with your teacher if you are not sure if your answers are correct or not.

## Unit 52

- 52.1** 2 for    3 from    4 to    5 At    6 for

- 52.2** 2 the 22nd century – the future  
 3 the 18th century – the past  
 4 the 21st century – the present  
 5 the 20th century – the past

**52.3** Possible answers:

- 2 I sometimes go to school by bus. I usually go by car.  
 3 I often watch TV.  
 4 I never drink milk. I usually drink coffee.  
 5 I never wear a hat.  
 6 I often eat chocolate.  
 7 I sometimes go to bed at 10. I usually go to bed at 11.  
 8 I sometimes go to the theatre.

- 52.4** 2 Probably a week ago    3 In a few minutes    4 4 o'clock

**52.5** John plays tennis twice a week. He practises the piano once a week and he has a business meeting in Germany once a month.

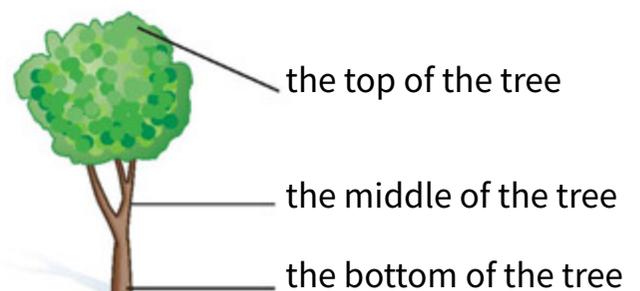
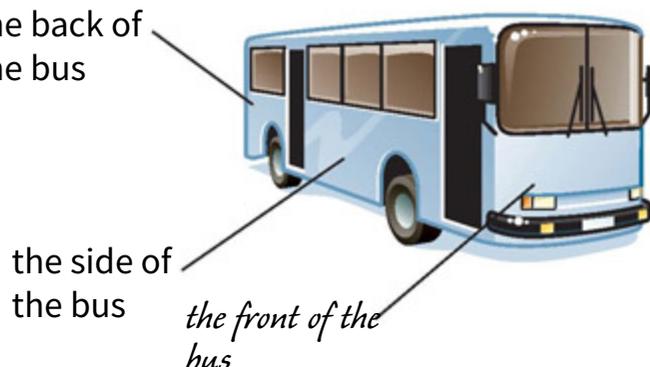
Julia and Alexa play tennis three times a week. They practise the piano twice a day. They go to Germany for a business meeting six times a year. *or* They have a business meeting in Germany six times a year.

## Unit 53

- 53.1** 2 here    3 there    4 everywhere    5 there    6 back

- 53.2** 2 at    3 on    4 at    5 on    6 in; in

- 53.3** the back of  
the bus



**53.4** 2 out 3 away 4 away; abroad

**53.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I'm studying English in the UK.
- 2 Yes, I'm going to Dublin and to the US.
- 3 At the moment I have a pen in my right hand.
- 4 The Answer key is at the end of this book.
- 5 Unit 3 is at the beginning of this book (Unit 3 out of 60 units). (Note: we say *at*.)
- 6 Unit 36 is in the middle of this book (Unit 36 out of 60 units). (Note: we say *in*.)

## Unit 54

**54.1** 2 badly 3 loudly 4 fast [NOT ~~fastly~~] 5 quietly 6 well

**54.2** 2 slow 3 good 4 in 5 right 6 badly 7 quietly 8 the

**54.3** suddenly ✗ sadly ✓ strangely ✓ quickly ✗ easily ✓  
Suddenly means very quickly, when you are not expecting it.  
Quickly is similar to 'fast' when fast is an adverb, not when it is an adjective.

**54.4** Possible answers:

- 2 My brother speaks German badly.
- 3 I usually eat too fast.
- 4 My dog is old and very slow.
- 5 My voice is quiet.
- 6 I like to sing loudly.
- 7 My mum always behaves in a friendly way.
- 8 I like to do things the right way.

## Unit 55

**55.1** 2 milk; butter 3 advice 4 air 5 work 6 traffic

**55.2** 2 a 4 f 6 c  
3 e 5 g 7 b

**55.3** 2 is / was 3 is / was 4 is; was 5 is / was 6 is / was

**55.4** 2 Where can I get some **information** about your country?  
3 Let me give you **some** advice.  
4 Cook **this** spaghetti for ten minutes.  
5 Can I have **some** bread, please?  
6 We need to buy some new **furniture**.  
7 The east of the country usually has better weather than the west. [NOT a better weather]  
8 I must find **some** new accommodation soon.

## Unit 56

**56.1** Possible answers:

- 2 very bad / terrible / awful / dreadful
- 3 terrible / awful / dreadful
- 4 excellent / great / wonderful
- 5 awful / horrible
- 6 wonderful / lovely
- 7 bad
- 8 wonderful / lovely

**56.2** Possible answers:

- 2 Oh, how awful!
- 3 That's a lovely idea! / Yes, great!
- 4 Yes, there's the Ritz. It's an excellent restaurant.
- 5 They're wonderful!
- 6 Yes, that's perfect!

**56.3** 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 b

**56.4**

good	bad
brilliant marvellous fine	dreadful nasty

**56.5** *Possible answers:*

brilliant idea / scientist      nasty surprise / smell  
marvellous weather / food      fine weather / day

## Unit 57

- 57.1** 2 d This bicycle belongs to the hotel.  
3 h The children thanked their aunt for the money.  
4 g Molly is listening to music on her phone.  
5 a He apologised for his mistake.  
6 e Let me pay for our tickets.  
7 b Javier is thinking about the holidays.  
8 f Over 100 people came to the football match.

- 57.2** 2 after people  
3 for them  
4 forward to my party  
5 at me  
6 for a new one  
7 forward to it  
8 after the children

- 57.3** 2 at    3 to    4 in    5 to    6 of    7 about    8 to

- 57.4** 3 Hiroshi wasn't used to eating British food.  
4 He was used to traffic jams.  
5 He was used to expensive shops.  
6 He wasn't used to British money.

**57.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I was good at languages and bad at PE.      5 I like listening to folk music.  
2 I usually ask for a black coffee.            6 I am looking forward to my holiday.  
3 I am proud of my family.                    7 I belong to a tennis club.  
4 I am afraid of going to the dentist.        8 I am used to eating lots of different kinds of food.

## Unit 58

- 58.1** 2 rewrite / redo    3 informal    4 unhappy    5 half-price    6 unsafe

**58.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I never see my ex-boyfriend anymore.  
3 This work is not very good. Please redo it.  
4 It's impossible to read his handwriting.  
5 Pre-school children learn by playing.

- 58.3** 2 nerves before an exam  
3 a wrong answer, an answer that is not correct  
4 a book that has not been read  
5 to tell a story again

- 6 a brother with one parent the same (for example, perhaps with the same mother but not the same father)
- 7 a letter that is not finished
- 8 a drink with no alcohol in it (for example, fruit juice, cola)
- 9 to read a book again
- 10 to send an email again

**58.4** 2 uncomfortable 3 impolite 4 unpleasant 5 unattractive

### Over to you

*Possible answers:*

in: This is an incomplete answer – you need to finish it.

im: I thought the question he asked me was very impolite.

non: I want to buy a non-stick pan.

pre: Would you like to have a pre-lunch drink?

re: We're going to repaint this room next week.

un: My daughter's room is always very untidy.

### Unit 59

**59.1** 2 instructor 3 swimmer 4 happily 5 calculator 6 useful

**59.2** *Possible answers:*

You may be able to think of some other possible combinations.

2 fast worker / car / swimmer

3 beautiful beach / weather / car / book / smile / picture

4 sandy beach

5 sunny weather / smile

6 hard worker

7 useful idea / book

8 endless fun

9 useless idea / book (*Note: You can also say 'I'm a useless swimmer'. It is typical of spoken rather than written English and means 'I am no good at swimming.'*)

**59.3** 2 badly 3 helpful 4 kindness 5 careless 6 windy 7 easily 8 builder

**59.4** 2 a person who travels 7 the opposite of doing something well  
 3 the opposite of fast 8 a thing for opening tins  
 4 with lots of hope 9 a person who plays football  
 5 weather when it is raining 10 weather when there is a lot of snow  
 6 it doesn't hurt

### Unit 60

**60.1** 2 lose 3 felt 4 cooker 5 fell 6 quite 7 loose 8 cook

**60.2** 2 loose – *juice* 3 quite – *right* 4 quiet – *higher*

**60.3** 2 He/She checks it. 4 Good afternoon. 6 Can you lend me £ 1?  
 3 Can I borrow your camera? 5 They wait for the bus. 7 Please be quiet.

**60.4** *Possible answers:*

1 I am expecting my brother at 5.30. (= He said he would come at 5.30.)

2 I hope to go on holiday to Spain. (= I really want to go to Spain.)

3 Sometimes I borrow books and DVDs.

4 Yes, but only to my best friend!

# Phonemic symbols

## Vowel sounds

Symbol	Examples
/i /	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ /	pin dinner
/ /	foot could pull
/u /	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ /	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ /	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ /	part heart laugh
/e /	name late aim
/a /	my idea time
/ /	boy noise
/e /	pair where bear
/ /	hear beer
/ /	go home show
/a /	out cow
/ /	pure fewer

## Consonant sounds

Symbol	Examples
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/ /	go guitar
/t /	catch church
/d /	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/ /	thick path
/ /	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ /	shop sugar machine
/ /	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

ˈ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

ˌ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

# Index

The numbers in the Index are **Unit** numbers not page numbers. The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

- about ə'baʊt 25  
abroad ə'brɔ:d 53  
absolutely ,ʌbsə'lu:tli 9  
accommodation  
ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən 55  
action film 'ʌkʃən fɪlm 24  
actually 'ʌktʃuəli 9  
address ə'dres 16  
add to basket ʌd tə 'bʌskət 20  
advert 'ʌdvɜ:t 35  
advertisement  
əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt 35  
advice əd'vaɪs 55  
aeroplane 'eərəpleɪn 32  
afraid of ə'freɪd əv 57  
Africa 'ʌfrɪkə 27  
after 'ɑ:ftə 50  
afternoon ,ɑ:ftə'nu:n 51, 60  
age eɪdʒ 5  
ago ə'gəʊ 52  
agree ə'gri: 9  
air eə 55  
air pollution  
eə pə'lu:ʃən 37  
alarm clock ə'lɑ:m klɒk 12  
alcohol 'ʌlkəhɒl 22  
also 'ɔ:lsoʊ 50  
always 'ɔ:lweɪz 52  
American ə'merɪkən 27  
American football  
ə'merɪkən 'fʊtbɔ:l 23  
and ʌnd 50  
angry 'ʌŋgri 7  
animal 'ʌnɪməl 31  
answer 'ɑ:nsə 48  
Antarctica ,ʌn'tɑ:ktɪkə 27  
anyway 'eniweɪ 9  
apologise ə'pɒlədʒaɪz 36  
apologise for ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔ: 57  
apple 'ʌpəl 10, 55  
apple pie 'ʌpəl paɪ 22  
apps ʌps 17  
April 'eɪprəl 51  
Arabic 'ʌrəbɪk 27  
Argentina ,ɑ:dʒən'ti:nə 27  
Argentinian ,ɑ:dʒən'tɪniən 27  
arm ɑ:m 3  
armchair 'ɑ:mtʃeə 13  
around ə'raʊnd 9  
arrest ə'rest 34  
arrive ə'raɪv 32  
arrive at ə'raɪv ɪt 49  
arrive in ə'raɪv ɪn 49  
art ɑ:t 15  
as well ʌz wel 50  
Asia 'eɪzə 27  
ask ɑ:sk 48  
ask (someone) the time  
ɑ:sk ðə taɪm 48  
ask (someone) the way  
ɑ:sk ðə weɪ 48  
ask for ɑ:sk fɔ: 48, 57  
ask someone for something  
ɑ:sk 'sʌmwʌn fɔ:'sʌmθɪŋ 48  
ask someone to do  
something ɑ:sk 'sʌmwʌn tu:  
du:'sʌmθɪŋ 48  
aspirin 'ʌsprɪn 6  
asthma 'ʌsmə 6  
at ɪt 53  
at home ɪt hæʊm 53  
at the moment ɪt ðə  
'məʊmənt 52  
attack ə'tʌk 34  
August 'ɔ:gəst 51  
aunt ɑ:nt 1  
Australasia ,ɒstrə'leɪzə 27  
Australia ɒs'streɪliə 27  
Australian ɒs'streɪliən 27  
autumn 'ɔ:təm 51  
average-looking 'ʌvrɪdʒ  
'lʊkɪŋ 5  
away ə'weɪ 53  
awful 'ɔ:fəl 56  
baby 'beɪbi 2  
back bʌk 3, 53  
bacon 'beɪkən 31  
bad bʌd 54, 56  
bad at bʌd ɪt 57  
bad mood bʌd mu:d 36  
badly 'bʌdli 54  
badminton 'bʌdmɪntən 23  
bag bʌg 4, 19  
baker('s) 'beɪkə 19  
ball game bɔ:l geɪm 23  
banana bə'nɑ:nə 10  
band bʌnd 26  
bank bʌŋk 29  
bank clerk bʌŋk klɑ:k 14  
bank holiday bʌŋk 'hɒlədeɪ 33  
bar bɑ: 22  
baseball 'beɪsbɔ:l 23  
basement 'beɪsmənt 19  
basin 'beɪsən 12  
basket 'bʌskət 20  
basketball 'bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l 23  
bath bɑ:θ 38  
bathroom 'bɑ:θrʊm 12, 21  
battery 'bʌtəri 17  
be born bi:bɔ:n 2  
Be careful bi:'keəfəl 9  
be used to bi:ju:st tə 57  
beans bi:nz 10, 22  
beard biəd 5  
beautiful 'bjʊtɪfəl 5, 59  
beauty 'bjʊti 19  
beauty salon 'bjʊti 'sʌlɒn 14  
because bi'kɔ:z 50  
bed bed 12  
bedroom 'bedrʊm 12  
bedside lamp 'bedsaɪd  
lʌmp 12  
bedside table 'bedsaɪd  
'teɪbəl 12  
beef bi:f 31  
beer biə 10  
before bi'fɔ: 50  
beginning bi'gɪnɪŋ 53  
belong to bi'lɒŋ tə 57  
belt belt 4  
bicycle 'baɪsəkl 32  
bike baɪk 32  
bigger (size) bɪgə 19  
bill bɪl 21  
bin bɪn 11  
biology baɪ'ɒlədʒi 15  
bird bɜ:d 31  
birth bɜ:θ 2  
birthday 'bɜ:θdeɪ 2  
Bless you bles ju: 8  
blonde blɒnd 5  
blood blʌd 3  
blue blu: 5  
board bɔ:d 15  
board pen bɔ:d pen 15  
board rubber bɔ:d 'rʌbə 15  
boarding card 'bɔ:dɪŋ kɑ:d 32  
boat bəʊt 32  
body 'bɒdi 3  
bonfire 'bɒnfɑ:ə 33

Bonfire Night	'bɒnfaiə naɪt	33	Can you tell me the way ...?	kən juː tel miː ðə weɪ	29	children's department	'tʃɪldrənz dɪ'pɑːtmənt	19
book	bʊk	13, 25, 32	can't stand	kɑːnt stænd	26	Chile	'tʃɪliː	27
book a seat	bʊk ə siːt	32	Canada	'kænədə	27	China	'tʃaɪnə	27
bookshelf (bookshelves)	'bʊkʃelf	13	Canadian	kə'neɪdiən	27	Chinese	ˌtʃaɪ'niːz	27
bookshop	'bʊkʃɒp	19	cancer	'kænsə	6	chips	tʃɪps	10
boots	buːts	4	car	kɑː	18, 29, 32	chocolate	'tʃɒklət	22
boring	'bɔːrɪŋ	24	car crash	kɑː krʌʃ	37	cholera	'kɒlərə	6
born	bɔːn	2	car park	kɑː pɑːk	29	chopsticks	'tʃɒpstɪks	11
borrow	'bɒrəʊ	60	car theft	kɑː θeft	34	Christmas	'krɪsməs	33
bottom	'bɒtəm	53	car thief	kɑː θiːf	34	Christmas tree	'krɪsməs triː	33
bowl	bəʊl	11	carpet	'kɑːpɪt	13	cinema	'sɪnəmə	24
brain	breɪn	3	carrier bag	'kæriə bʌg	19	clarinet	ˌklærɪ'net	26
Brazil	brə'zɪl	27	carrot(s)	'kærət	10	classical music	'klæsɪkəl	
Brazilian	brə'zɪljən	27	carry	'kæri	4, 49	'mjuːzɪk	26	
bread	bred	10, 55	cartoon	kɑː'tuːn	24, 35	clean	kliːn	12
break into	breɪk 'ɪntə	34	cash	kæʃ	19	clean the house	kliːn ðə haʊs	47
breakfast	'brekfəst	21, 38	cash desk	kæʃ desk	19	clean your teeth	kliːn jɔː tiːθ	12
bride	braɪd	2	cash machine	kæʃ mə'ʃiːn	29	climb	klaɪm	49
bridegroom	'braɪdgrʊm	2	cat	kæt	31	close the curtains	kləʊs ðə	
bring	brɪŋ	44	catch	kætʃ	49	'kɜːtɪns	13	
bring back	brɪŋ bæk	44	cello	'tʃeləʊ	26	closed	kləʊzd	19
British	'brɪtɪʃ	27	century	'sentʃəri	51	cloth	klɒθ	11
broken	'brəʊkən	36	chair	tʃeə	13	clothes	kləʊðz	4
brother	'brʌðə	1	change	tʃeɪndʒ	19, 21, 32, 35	cloud	klaʊd	28
brown	braʊn	5	change trains	tʃeɪndʒ treɪnz	32	cloudy	'klaʊdi	28
burger	'bɜːgə	22	change the channel	tʃeɪndʒ		coach	kəʊtʃ	18
burglar	'bɜːglə	34	ðə 'tʃænl	35	coach tour	kəʊtʃ tuə	18	
burglary	'bɜːgləri	34	change money	tʃeɪndʒ		coat	kəʊt	4
bus	bʌs	29, 32	'mʌni	21, 29	code	kəʊd	21	
bus station	bʌs 'steɪʃən	29	channel	'tʃænl	35	coffee	'kɒfi	10, 38, 55
but	bʌt	50	charger	'tʃɑːdʒə	17	coffee maker	'kɒfi 'meɪkə	11
butcher('s)	'bʊtʃə	19	chat	tʃæt	25	coffee table	'kɒfi 'teɪbəl	13
butter	'bʌtə	55	chat to friends online	tʃæt tə		cold	kəʊld	6, 7, 28, 38
by bus	baɪ bʌs	18, 47	frendz 'ɒnlain	25	Colombia	kə'lɒmbiə	27	
by car	baɪ kɑː	18, 47	check	tʃek	21, 32, 60	Colombian	kə'lɒmbiən	27
by coach	baɪ kəʊtʃ	18	check in	tʃek ɪn	32	colour	'kʌlə	19, 20
by ferry	baɪ 'feri	18	check in online	tʃek ɪn		comb	kəʊm	12
by plane	baɪ pleɪn	18	ˌɒn'leɪn	32	come	kʌm	25, 42	
by train	baɪ treɪn	18, 47	check out	tʃek aʊt	21	come along	kʌm ə'lɒŋ	42
café	'kæfeɪ	22	check your bill	tʃek jɔː bɪl	21	come and see me	kʌm ənd siː	
calculator	'kælkjʊleɪtə	59	Cheers	tʃiəz	8	miː	42	
calf	kɑːf	31	cheese	tʃiːz	38	come back	kʌm bæk	42
call	kɔːl	16, 17	chemist('s)	'kemɪst	19	come back from	kʌm bæk	
call a friend	kɔːl ə frend	47	chemistry	'kemɪstri	15	frɒm	42	
call after	kɔːl 'ɑːftə	2	cheque	tʃek	19	come from	kʌm frɒm	42
call back	kɔːl bæk	16	chest	tʃest	3	come home	kʌm həʊm	42, 47
camera	'kæmrə	17, 18	chest of drawers	tʃest əv draʊz	12	come in	kʌm ɪn	42
camping	'kæmpɪŋ	18	chick	tʃɪk	31	come into	kʌm 'ɪntə	42
Can I...?	kæn aɪ	29	chicken	'tʃɪkɪn	31	come on	kʌm ɒn	46
Can I help with ...?	kæn aɪ help wɪð	11	chicken tikka masala	'tʃɪkɪn tɪkə		come out	kʌm aʊt	42
			mə'sɑːlə	33	come out of	kʌm aʊt ɒv	42	
			children	'tʃɪldrən	1	come to	kʌm tə	57

come to stay 25  
 comedy 'kɒmədi 24  
 comic 'kɒmɪk 25  
 computer kəm'pjʊtə 15, 16, 35, 36  
 computer crashed kəm'pjʊtə krʌʃd 36  
 computer magazine kəm'pjʊtə ,mægə'zin 35  
 concert 'kɒnsət 26  
 Congratulations kən,grʌ'tʃʊ'leɪʃənz 8, 48  
 conservation area ,kɒnsə'veɪʃən 'eəriə 30  
 continent 'kɒntɪnənt 27  
 control kən'trəʊl 60  
 cook kʊk 11, 60  
 cooker 'kʊkə 11, 59, 60  
 cooking 'kʊkɪŋ 25  
 cost kɒst 19  
 cottage 'kɒtɪdʒ 30  
 Could I have the bill? kʊd aɪ hæv ðə bɪl 22  
 countable 'kaʊntəbəl 55  
 country 'kʌntri 27, 30  
 country road 'kʌntri rəʊd 30  
 countryside 'kʌntrɪsaɪd 30  
 course kɔ:s 22  
 court kɔ:t 23, 34  
 cousin 'kʌzən 1  
 cow kaʊ 31  
 crash krʌʃ 36  
 credit card 'kredɪt kɑ:d 19, 20  
 crime kraɪm 34  
 criminal 'krɪmɪnəl 34  
 crowded 'kraʊdɪd 37  
 cup kʌp 11  
 cup of tea kʌp əv ti: 38  
 cupboard 'kʌbəd 11  
 currency 'kʌrənsi 18  
 curry 'kʌri 22, 33  
 curtains 'kɜ:tənz 13  
 customs 'kʌstəmz 32  
 cut kʌt 36  
 dance da:ns 49  
 dark dɑ:k 5  
 date deɪt 16  
 daughter 'dɔ:tə 1  
 day deɪ 51  
 day after tomorrow deɪ ɑ:ftə tə'mɒrəvʊ 51  
 day before yesterday deɪ br'fɔ:r jestədeɪ 51  
 dead ded 2  
 death deθ 2  
 December dɪ'sembə 51  
 degree dɪ'ɡri: 15  
 degrees dɪ'ɡri:z 28  
 delete dɪ'li:t 17  
 delicious dɪ'liʃəs 22  
 delivery dɪ'lɪvəri 20  
 dentist 'dentɪst 6  
 depart dɪ'pɑ:t 32  
 department store dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ: 19  
 desk desk 15  
 dessert dɪ'zɜ:t 22  
 die daɪ 2, 36  
 diet daɪət 6  
 different (colour) 'dɪfrnt 19  
 dinner 'dɪnə 25  
 direct dɪ'rekt 32  
 directions daɪ'rekʃns 29  
 director dɪ'rektə 24  
 disaster dɪ'zɑ:stə 37  
 dishwasher 'dɪʃ,wɒʃə 11  
 divorced dɪ'vɔ:st 2  
 do du: 14, 23, 25, 40  
 do a course du: ə kɔ:s 15  
 do an exam du: ən ɪg'zæm 15  
 do business with du: 'bɪznɪs wɪð 40  
 do homework du: 'həʊmwɜ:k 15, 40  
 do nothing du: 'nʌθɪŋ 25  
 do some exercise(s) du: sʌm 'eksəsaɪz 40  
 do the gardening du: ðə 'gɑ:dənɪŋ 40  
 do the housework du: ðə 'haʊswɜ:k 40  
 do the washing du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ 40  
 do the washing-up du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ ʌp 40  
 Do you come from ...? du: ju: kʌm frɒm 1  
 Do you do any...? du: ju: du: enɪ 23  
 Do you have any ...? du: ju: hæv 'eni 31  
 Do you like...? du: ju: laɪk 7, 40  
 Do you play ...? du: ju: pleɪ 23  
 do your best du: jɔ: best 40  
 doctor 'dɒktə 6, 14  
 documentary ,dɒkjə'mentə ri 35  
 dog dɒg 31  
 dot dɒt 16  
 double room 'dʌbəl ru:m 21  
 download ,daʊn'ləʊd 17, 25, 26  
 download an app daʊn'ləʊd ən ɒp 17  
 downstairs ,daʊn'steəz 12  
 drawers draʊz 12  
 drawing pin 'drɔ:ɪŋ pɪn 15  
 dreadful 'dredfəl 56  
 dress dres 4  
 dressing table 'dresɪŋ 'teɪbəl 12  
 drink drɪŋk 10, 22, 38  
 drive draɪv 49  
 drug dealer drʌg 'di:lə 34  
 drug dealing drʌg 'di:lɪŋ 34  
 drugs drʌgz 34  
 drums drʌmz 26  
 dry draɪ 11, 28  
 DVD ,di:vi:'di: 25  
 DVD player ,di:vi:'di: 'pleɪə 15  
 ear ɪə 3  
 earthquake 'ɜ:θkweɪk 37  
 Easter 'i:stə 33  
 Easter eggs 'i:stə egz 33  
 egg eg 31  
 Egypt 'ɪdʒɪpt 27  
 Egyptian ɪ'dʒɪpsən 27  
 elderly 'eldəli 5  
 electricals ɪ'lektrɪkəlz 19  
 elephant 'elɪfənt 31  
 else els 9  
 email 'i:meɪl 16  
 email address 'i:meɪl ə'dres 16  
 end end 53  
 endless 'endləs 59  
 engineer ,endʒɪ'nɪə 14  
 English 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ 15, 27  
 enjoy ɪn'dʒɔɪ 18, 24  
 entrance 'entrəns 29  
 envelope 'envələʊp 16  
 Europe 'jʊərəp 27  
 even 'i:vən 50  
 evening 'i:vɪŋ 35, 51, 60  
 every 'evri 12  
 everywhere 'evriweə 53  
 exam ɪg'zæm 15, 38  
 excellent 'eksələnt 56  
 exchange ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ 21

- exchange some money  
iks'tʃeɪndʒ sʌm mʌni 21
- Excuse me ɪk'skju:s mi: 8, 29
- exercise 'eksəsaɪz 6
- exit 'eksɪt 29
- expect ɪk'spekt 60
- ex-boyfriend eks 'bɔɪfrend 58
- ex-wife eks waɪf 58
- eye aɪ 3
- face feɪs 3, 5
- factory 'fæktəri 14
- fail an exam feɪl ən ɪg'zæm 15
- fair feə 5
- fall fɔ:l 49, 60
- fall asleep fɔ:l ə'sli:p 12
- family 'fæmli 1
- farm fɑ:m 30
- farm animal fɑ:m 'nɪməl 31
- farmer 'fɑ:mə 14, 30
- fast fɑ:st 54
- fast food fɑ:st fu:d 10
- fast food restaurant fɑ:st fu:d  
'restrɒnt 22
- fat fæt 5
- father 'fɑ:ðə 1
- favourite 'feɪvərɪt 23, 35
- February 'februəri 51
- feed fi:d 31
- feel fi:l 6, 60
- feelings 'fi:lɪŋz 7
- feet fi:t 3
- ferry 'feri 18
- festival 'festɪvl 33
- field fi:ld 30
- fill in a form fɪl ɪn ə fɔ:m 21
- fill up with fɪl ʌp wɪð 32
- film fɪlm 24, 25
- film star fɪlm stɑ: 24
- fine faɪn 6, 34
- finger 'fɪŋgə 3
- Finnish 'fɪnɪʃ 27
- fireworks 'faɪəwɜ:kz 33
- first floor fɜ:st flɔ: 19
- fish fɪʃ 10, 31
- fish and chips fɪʃ ənd tʃɪps 10,  
22, 33
- flight flɑɪt 18, 32
- flight attendant  
flɑɪt ə'tendənt 32
- flood flʌd 37
- floor flɔ: 19, 21
- flute flut 26
- flute-player flut 'pleɪə 26
- fly flɑɪ 18, 49
- foal fəʊl 31
- fog fɒg 28
- foggy 'fɒgi 28
- folk music fəʊk 'mju:zɪk 26
- food fu:d 10, 19
- foot fʊt 3
- football 'fʊtbɔ:l 23
- football hooligan  
'fʊtbɔ:l 'hʊlɪgən 34
- football hooliganism  
'fʊtbɔ:l 'hʊlɪgənɪzəm 34
- forest 'fɒrɪst 30
- forest fire 'fɒrɪst faɪə 37
- fork fɔ:k 11
- form fɔ:m 21
- fortnight 'fɔ:tnaɪt 51
- fourth fɔ:θ 19
- freezer 'fri:zə 11
- French frenʃ 27
- Friday 'fraɪdeɪ 51
- fridge frɪdʒ 11
- friend frend 25
- friendly 'frendli 54
- front frʌnt 53
- fruit fru:t 10
- fruit juice fru:t dʒu:s 10
- fruit salad fru:t 'sæləd 22
- frying pan 'fraɪɪŋ pæn 11
- funeral 'fju:nərəl 2
- furniture 'fɜ:nɪtʃə 19, 55
- future 'fju:tʃə 52
- game geɪm 38
- gardening 'gɑ:dənɪŋ 25
- garlic 'gɑ:lɪk 10
- geography dʒɪ'ɒgrəfi 15
- German 'dʒɜ:mən 27
- Germany 'dʒɜ:məni 27
- get get 45
- get a bus get ə bʌs 29
- get a degree get ə dɪ'grɪ: 15
- get a train get ə treɪn 29
- get back get bæk 45
- get dressed get drest 4, 12
- get information get  
'ɪnfə'meɪʃən 29
- get married get 'mæɪrɪd 2, 45
- get off get ɒf 29, 46
- get on get ɒn 46
- get to get tu: 45
- get undressed get ʌn'drest 4,  
12
- get up get ʌp 12, 46, 47
- get used to get 'ju:s tu 57
- gift shop gɪft ʃɒp 19
- giraffe dʒɪ'rɑ:f 31
- give gɪv 31
- give a lift gɪv ə lɪft 32
- glass glɑ:s 11
- glasses 'glɑ:sɪz 4
- global 'glɔ:bəl 37
- gloves glɒvz 4
- go gəʊ 12, 23, 24, 39, 42
- go by gəʊ baɪ 39, 49
- go dancing gəʊ 'da:ntsɪŋ 39
- go down gəʊ daʊn 39
- go downstairs gəʊ ,daʊn'steəz 12
- go fishing gəʊ 'fɪʃɪŋ 39
- go for a walk  
gəʊ fɔ:r ə wɔ:k 47
- go in gəʊ ɪn 39
- go into gəʊ 'ɪntə 39
- go off gəʊ ɒf 46
- go on gəʊ ɒn 46
- go on holiday gəʊ  
ɒn 'hɒlədeɪ 18
- go out of gəʊ aʊt ɒv 39
- go shopping gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ 39
- go sightseeing gəʊ 'saɪtsi:ŋ 39
- go skiing gəʊ 'ski:ŋ 30, 39
- go swimming gəʊ 'swɪmɪŋ 39
- go through customs gəʊ θru:  
'kɪstəms 32
- go to bed gəʊ tə bed 12, 47
- go to court gəʊ tə kɔ:t 34
- go to prison gəʊ tə 'prɪzn 34
- go to the bathroom  
gəʊ tə ðə 'bɑ:θrʊm 47
- go to school gəʊ tə sku:l 15
- go to university gəʊ tə  
'ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti 15
- go to work gəʊ tə wɜ:k 47
- go up gəʊ ʌp 39
- go upstairs gəʊ ʌp'steəz 12
- goat gəʊt 31
- go walking gəʊ wɔ:kɪŋ 30
- going to 'gəʊɪŋ tu: 39
- good gʊd 54, 56
- Good afternoon  
gʊd ,ɑ:ftə'nu:n 8
- good at gʊd ət 57
- Good evening gʊd 'i:vɪnɪŋ 8
- good for you gʊd fə ju: 6
- Good luck gʊd lʌk 8
- Good morning gʊd 'mɔ:ɪnɪŋ 8
- Goodbye gʊd'baɪ 8, 48

good-looking	'gʊd'lʊkɪŋ	5	have a cup of tea (coffee)	hʌv ə kʌp ɒv tiː	22, 38	have toothache	hʌv tuːθeɪk	6
Goodnight	'gʊd'nɑɪt	8	have a drink	hʌv ə drɪŋk	38	Have you got any ...?	hʌv juː gɒt 'eni	1
granddaughter	'grʌŋdɔːtə	1	have a game	hʌv ə geɪm	38	hay fever	heɪ 'fiːvə	6
grandfather	'grʌŋfɑːðə	1	have a go	hʌv ə gəʊ	38	head	hed	3, 5
grandmother	'grʌŋmʌðə	1	have a good journey	hʌv ə gʊd 'dʒɜːni	38	headache	'hedeɪk	6, 38
grandparents	'grʌŋpeərənts	1	have a good time	hʌv ə gʊd taɪm	38	headphones	'hedfəʊnz	25
grandson	'grʌnsʌn	1	have a great time	hʌv ə greɪt taɪm	18	health	helθ	6
grape(s)	greɪp	10	have a headache	hʌv ə 'hedeɪk	6, 38	heart	hɑːt	3
great	greɪt	56	have a healthy diet	hʌv ə 'helθi daɪət	6	heart attack	hɑːt ə'tʌk	6
green	grɪn	5	have a heart attack	hʌv ə hɑːt ə'tʌk	6	heavy	'hevi	5
green beans	grɪn biːnz	22	have a holiday	'hɒlədeɪ	18	height	haɪt	5
greetings	'griːtɪŋz	8	have a lesson	hʌv ə 'lesən	38	helicopter	'helɪkɒptə	32
groom	gruːm	2	have a look	hʌv ə lʊk	38	hello	he'ləʊ	8, 48
ground floor	graʊnd flɔː	19	have a meal	hʌv ə miːl	38	hen	hen	31
grow flowers / vegetables	grəʊ flauəz / 'vedʒtəbəlz	25	have a meeting	hʌv ə 'miːtɪŋ	38	here	hɪə	53
guilty	'gɪlti	34	have a moment	hʌv ə 'məʊmənt	38	here is ...	hɪər ɪz	21
guitar	grɪ'tɑː	26	have a party	hʌv ə 'pɑːti	38	hi	haɪ	8
hair	heə	3, 5, 31	have a piano lesson	hʌv ə piːnəʊ lesən	26	hi-fi	'haɪfaɪ	13
haircut	'heəkʌt	38	have a picnic	hʌv ə 'pɪknɪk	30	hill	hɪl	30
hairbrush	'heəbrʌʃ	12	have a row with	hʌv ə rəʊ wɪð	36	hip	hɪp	3
hairdresser('s)	'heə,dresə	14	have a sleep	hʌv ə sliːp	25	hire a car	haɪə ə kɑː	32
hairdryer	'heədraɪə	21	have a shower	hʌv ə 'ʃaʊə	12, 47	history	'hɪstri	15
half	haɪf	58	have a swim	hʌv ə swɪm	38	hobby	'hɒbi	25
half-hour	'haɪf,ʌʊə	58	have a wake-up call	hʌv ə weɪk ʌp kɔːl	21	Hogmanay	'hɒgməneɪ	33
half-price	'haɪf'praɪs	58	have a word with	hʌv ə wɜːd wɪð	7, 38	holiday	'hɒlədeɪ	18
Halloween	hələʊ'iːn	33	have an exam	hʌv ən ɪg'zʌm	38	home	həʊm	12, 25, 36, 53
ham	hʌm	31	have breakfast	'brekfəst	21, 38, 47	homeless	'həʊmləs	37
hamburger	'hʌm,bɜːgə	10	have coffee	hʌv 'kɒfi	38	homework	'həʊmwɜːk	15, 38
hand	hʌnd	3	have dinner	hʌv 'dɪnə	38	honeymoon	'hɒnɪmuːn	2
handbag	'hʌnbʌg	4	have friends round	hʌv frendz raʊnd	25	hooligan	'huːlɪgən	34
happily	'hʌpɪli	59	have got	hʌv gɒt	38	hope	həʊp	7, 60
happiness	'hʌpɪnəs	59	have got ... on	hʌv gɒt ɒn	4	horrible	'hɒrəbl	56
happy	'hʌpi	7	have homework	hʌv həʊmwɜːk	38	horror	'hɒrə	24
happy about	'hʌpi ə'baʊt	7, 57	have lunch	hʌv lʌnʃ	38	horse	hɔːs	31
Happy Birthday	'hʌpi		have the time	hʌv ðə taɪm	38	horse racing	'hɔːs ,reɪsɪŋ	23
	'bɜːθdeɪ	8, 48	have to	hʌv tuː	38	hospital	'hɒspɪtəl	6, 14
Happy Christmas	'hʌpi 'krɪsməs	8				hot	hɒt	7, 28
happy for	'hʌpi fɔː	7				hot dog	hɒt dɒg	10
Happy New Year	'hʌpi njuː jɪə	8, 48				hotel	həʊ'tel	21
hat	hʌt	4				hour	ʌʊə	51, 52
hate	heɪt	7				Houses of Parliament	'haʊzɪz əv 'pɑːləmənt	33
have	hʌv	12, 22, 25, 38				How (awful)	haʊ	56
have (your) hair cut	hʌv heə kʌt	38				How about ...?	haʊ ə'baʊt	7, 9
have a baby	hʌv ə 'beɪbi	2				How are you?	haʊ ə juː	6, 8
have a bad day	hʌv ə bʌd deɪ	36				How do I get to ...?	haʊ duː aɪ get tə	29
have a bath	hʌv ə bɑːθ	38				How do you ...?	haʊ duː juː	47
have a cold	hʌv ə kəʊld	6, 38				How do you say ...?	haʊ duː juː seɪ	48
						How heavy are you?	haʊ hevi aː juː	6

How long does it take ...?	it's up to you	its ʌp tə juː	9	light	laɪt	12, 13
haʊ lɒŋ dəz ɪt teɪk	Italian	ɪ'tɪliən	27	light switch	laɪt swɪtʃ	13
How much ...?	Italy	'ɪtəli	27	lightning	'laɪtnɪŋ	28
haʊ mʌtʃ	jacket	'dʒækɪt	4	like	laɪk	7, 23, 50
How much do you weigh?	January	'dʒænjuəri	51	lion	laɪən	31
haʊ	Japan	dʒə'pʌn	27	lip	lɪp	3
mʌtʃ duː juː weɪ	Japanese	dʒə'pniːz	27	lipstick	'lɪpstɪk	3
How often do you ...?	jazz	dʒæz	26	listen (to)	'lɪsən	13, 25, 26, 47
haʊ 'ɒfən	jeans	dʒiːnz	4	listen to	'lɪsən tə	57
duː juː	job	dʒɒb	14	litre	'lɪtə	55
How old is he?	journalist	'dʒɜːnəlɪst	35	living room	'lɪvɪŋ ru:m	13
haʊ əʊld ɪz hi	journey	'dʒɜːni	32	loaf	ləʊf	55
How tall is...?	judo	'dʒuːdɒʊ	23	local	'ləʊkəl	17
haʊ təɪl ɪz	July	dʒu'laɪ	51	locked	lɒkt	17
How would you like ...?	jump	dʒʌmp	49	long	lɒŋ	5
haʊ wʊd juː laɪk	jumper	'dʒʌmpə	4	look after	lʊk 'ɑːftə	57
hungry	June	dʒuːn	51	look at	lʊk ɪt	57
'hʌŋɡri	just relax	dʒʌst rɪ'læks	13	look for	lʊk fɔː	29, 36, 57
hurricane	karate	kə'reɪti	23	look forward to	lʊk 'fɔːwəd tə	57
'hʌrɪkən	kayaking	'kaɪɪŋ	23	look like	lʊk laɪk	5
hurry up	key	kiː	21	Look out	lʊk aʊt	9
'hʌrɪ ʌp	keyboard	'kiːbɔːd	16	loose	luːs	60
husband	kid	kɪd	31	lose	luːz	36, 60
'hʌzbænd	kilo	'kɪləʊ	55	loud	laʊd	54
I agree	king	kɪŋ	33	loudly	'laʊdli	54
aɪ ə'ɡri	kitchen	'kɪtʃɪn	11	love	lʌv	7, 24
I don't mind	kitchen roll	'kɪtʃɪn rɔʊl	11	lovely	'lʌvli	56
aɪ dəʊnt maɪnd	knee	niː	3	lunch	lʌntʃ	38
I'd like ...	knife	naɪf	11	luggage	'lʌɡɪdʒ	18, 21, 32, 55
aɪd laɪk	lake	leɪk	30	magazine	'mʌɡə'zɪn	25, 35
I'll have ...	lamb	læm	31	main course	meɪn kɔːs	22
aɪl hæv	lamp	læmp	13	make	meɪk	12, 40
ice cream	land	lænd	32	make a (phone) call	meɪk ə kɔːl	16
aɪs'kri:m	laptop	'læptɒp	16	make a choice	meɪk ə tʃɔɪs	41
I'm looking for ...	last	lɑːst	52	make a film	meɪk ə fɪlm	41
aɪm 'lʌkɪŋ	late for	leɪt fə	36	make a mess	meɪk ə mes	41
fɔː	law	lɔː	34	make a mistake	meɪk ə mɪs'teɪk	41
ICT (information communication technology)	leap year	li:p jɪə	51	make a noise	meɪk ə nɔɪz	41
aɪsɪ'tiː	learn	lɜːn	15, 26	make a photocopy	meɪk ə 'fəʊtə,kɒpi	41
if	leather	'leðə	31	make a video	meɪk ə 'vɪdɪəʊ	41
ɪf	leave	li:v	32	make an appointment	meɪk ən ə'pɔɪntmənt	41
ill	leave a voicemail	li:v ə 'vɔɪsmel	17	make breakfast	meɪk 'brekfəst	41
ɪl	left	left	29, 53	make dinner	meɪk 'dɪnə	41, 47
illness	leg	leg	3	make hot chocolate	meɪk hɒt 'tʃɒklət	41
'ɪlnəs	lend	lend	60	make lunch	meɪk lʌntʃ	41
impossible	lesson(s)	lesən	26, 38			
ɪm'pɒsəbəl	let's	lets	9			
in	letter	'letə	16			
ɪn	letter box	'letə bɒks	16			
in a bad mood	librarian	laɪ'breəriən	14			
ɪn ə bʌd	library	'laɪbrəri	29			
muːd	lift	lɪft	21			
in a moment						
ɪn ə 'mɒmənt						
in advance						
ɪn əd'vɑːns						
India						
'ɪndiə						
Indian						
'ɪndiən						
informal						
ɪn'fɔːməl						
information						
,ɪnfə'meɪʃən						
29, 55						
innocent						
'ɪnəsənt						
instructor						
ɪn'strʌktə						
interested in						
'ɪntrestɪd ɪn						
Internet						
'ɪntənət						
interview (with)						
'ɪntəvjuː						
Irish						
'aɪrɪʃ						
Is everything all right?						
ɪz 'evrɪθɪŋ ɔːl raɪt						
Is there...?						
ɪz ðeə						
it doesn't matter						
ɪt dʌznt						
'mʌtə						
it takes (+ time)						
ɪt teɪks						
It's ... here						
ɪts hɪə						
It's a ... day						
ɪts ə deɪ						
It's got...						
ɪts ɡɒt						

make me (feel) **meik mi:** 41  
 make my bed **meik maɪ bed** 41  
 make phone calls **meik fəʊn**  
     **kɔ:lz** 16  
 make some coffee  
     **meik səm 'kɒfi** 41  
 make some tea  
     **meik səm ti:** 41  
 malaria **mə'leəriə** 6  
 man-made **,mæn'meɪd** 37  
 manner **'mænə** 54  
 map **mæp** 32  
 March **mɑ:tʃ** 51  
 marriage **'mæriʒ** 2  
 married **'mæriɪd** 2  
 maths **mæθs** 15  
 May **meɪ** 51  
 meal **mi:l** 22, 38  
 meat **mi:t** 10, 31  
 mechanic **mə'kænɪk** 14  
 media **'mi:diə** 35  
 medium **'mi:diəm** 5, 22  
 memory **'meməri** 17  
 memory stick **'meməri stɪk** 16  
 men's wear **menz weə** 19  
 mend **mend** 36  
 menu **'menju:** 22  
 Merry Christmas  
     **'meri 'krɪsməs** 8, 48  
 message **'mesɪdʒ** 16, 17  
 microwave  
     **'maɪkrəweɪv** 11  
 middle **,mɪdəl** 53  
 middle-aged **'mɪdəl'eɪdʒd** 5  
 milk **mɪlk** 10, 31, 55  
 mineral water  
     **'mɪnərəl 'wɔ:tə** 10  
 mini-bar **'mɪni bɑ:** 21  
 minus **'maɪnəs** 28  
 minute **ˈmɪnɪt** 51  
 mirror **'mɪrə** 12  
 miss **mɪs** 49  
 mixed salad **mɪkst 'sɪləd** 22  
 mobile **'məʊbaɪl** 16  
 mobile device  
     **'məʊbaɪl dɪ'vaɪs** 16  
 modern languages  
     **'mɒdən 'lɪŋgwɪdʒɪz** 15  
 moment **'mɒmənt** 38, 52  
 Monday **'mʌndeɪ** 51  
 money **'mʌni** 21, 55  
 monkey **'mʌŋki** 31  
 month **mʌnθ** 51  
 mood **mu:d** 36  
 morning **'mɔ:niŋ** 35, 51  
 Moroccan **mə'rɒkən** 27  
 Morocco **mə'rɒkəʊ** 25  
 mosquito **mɒs'ki:təʊ** 6  
 mother **'mʌðə** 1  
 motor racing **'məʊtə'reɪsɪŋ** 23  
 motorbike **'məʊtəbaɪk** 32  
 motorcycle **'məʊtə,saɪkəl** 32  
 mountain **'maʊntɪn** 30  
 mouse **maʊs** 16  
 moustache **mə'staɪʃ** 5  
 mouth **maʊθ** 3  
 mug **mʌg** 11, 34  
 mugger **'mʌgə** 34  
 mugging **'mʌgɪŋ** 34  
 murder **'mɜ:də** 34  
 murderer **'mɜ:dərə** 34  
 museum **mju:'zi:əm** 29  
 mushroom(s) **'mʌʃrʊm** 10, 22  
 music **'mju:zɪk** 15, 26  
 musical **'mju:zɪkəl** 24, 26  
 musical instruments **'mju:zɪkəl**  
     **'ɪnstɾəmənts** 26  
 musician **mju:'zɪʃən** 26  
 nail **neɪl** 3  
 national park **'næʃənəl pɑ:k** 30  
 nationality **næʃən'ləti** 27  
 natural disaster  
     **'nætʃrəl dɪ'zɑ:stə** 37  
 nature **'neɪtʃə** 30, 35  
 neck **nek** 3  
 nephew **'nefju:** 1  
 never **'nevə** 52  
 new potatoes  
     **nju: pə'tetəʊz** 22  
 New Year's Day **nju: jɪəz deɪ** 33  
 New Year's Eve **,nju: jɪəz i:v** 33  
 New Zealand **,nju: 'zi:lənd** 27  
 news **nju:z** 35, 55  
 newsagent('s) **'nju:z,eɪdʒənt**  
     19  
 newspaper **'nju:z,peɪpə** 25, 29,  
     35  
 next **nekst** 52  
 next day delivery **nekst deɪ**  
     **dɪ'lɪvəri** 20  
 nice **nais** 56  
 niece **nɪ:s** 1  
 night **nait** 60  
 nightlife **'naitlaɪf** 18  
 no smoking **nəʊ 'sməʊkɪŋ** 29  
 non-smoking **nɒn 'sməʊkɪŋ** 58  
 normally **'nɔ:məli** 12, 47  
 North America **nɔ:θ ə'merɪkə** 27  
 nose **nəʊz** 3  
 not bad **nɒt bʌd** 56  
 not often **nɒt 'ɒfən** 52  
 not too bad **nɒt tu: bʌd** 8  
 note **nəʊt** 19  
 notebook **'nəʊtbʊk** 15  
 nothing **'nʌθɪŋ** 25  
 notice **'nəʊtɪs** 29  
 noticeboard **nəʊtɪsbɔ:d** 15  
 novel **'nɒvəl** 25  
 November **nə'vembə** 51  
 now **naʊ** 52  
 now and then **naʊ ən ðen** 52  
 number **'nʌmbə** 29  
 nurse **nɜ:s** 14  
 nursery school **'nɜ:sri sku:l** 33  
 o'clock **əʊ'klɒk** 52  
 occasionally **ə'keɪzənəli** 52  
 October **ɒk'təʊbə** 51  
 office **'ɒfɪs** 14  
 often **'ɒfən** 52  
 OHP **əʊ eɪtʃ 'pi:** 15  
 Oh dear **əʊ dɪə** 9  
 old(er) **əʊld** 5  
 on **ɒn** 53  
 on strike **ɒn straɪk** 37  
 on the first floor **ɒn ðə fɜ:st**  
     **flɔ:** 21  
 on the left **ɒn ðə left** 29, 53  
 on the phone **ɒn ðə fəʊn** 25  
 on the right **ɒn ðə raɪt** 53  
 on TV **ɒn ti:'vi:** 24  
 once **wʌns** 52  
 onion **'ʌnjən** 10  
 online **,ɒn'lain** 16, 20, 25, 35  
 online check-in  
     **,ɒn'lain tʃek ɪn** 32  
 online reviews **'aɪnlaɪn**  
     **rɪ'vju:z** 20  
 only **'əʊnli** 50  
 only child **'əʊnli tʃaɪld** 1  
 open **'əʊpən** 19  
 opera **'ɒpərə** 26  
 or **ɔ:** 50  
 orange **'ɒrɪndʒ** 10  
 orchestra **'ɔ:kɪstrə** 26  
 order **'ɔ:də** 22  
 order number **'ɔ:də 'nʌm.**  
     **bə** 20  
 out **aʊt** 53  
 out of order **aʊt əv 'ɔ:də** 29, 36

outside line ,aʊt'saɪd laɪn 21  
 oven 'ʌvən 33  
 over there 'əʊvə ðeə 21  
 overweight 'əʊvəweɪt 5  
 package holiday  
   'pækɪdʒ 'hɒlədeɪ 18  
 pain peɪn 3  
 pair of trousers / shorts /  
   glasses peər ɒv 'traʊzəz /ʃɔ:ts  
   /'glɑ:sɪz 4  
 Pakistan ,pɑ:kɪ'staɪn 27  
 Pakistani ,pɑ:kɪ'staɪni 27  
 paper 'peɪpə 35  
 parents 'peərənts 1  
 park pɑ:k 29  
 parrot 'pærət 31  
 party 'pɑ:ti 38  
 pass pɑ:s 13, 49  
 pass an exam  
   pɑ:s ən ɪg'zæm 15  
 passport 'pɑ:spɔ:t 18, 32  
 past pɑ:st 52  
 pasta 'pæstə 10  
 path pɑ:θ 30  
 pay peɪ 19, 34  
 pay a fine peɪ ə faɪn 34  
 pay for peɪ fɔ: 57  
 PE (physical education)  
   ,pɪ:'i: 15  
 pea(s) pi: 10  
 pear peə 10  
 pedestrian area  
   pə'destriən 'eəriə 29  
 pen pen 15  
 pencil 'pensəl 15  
 pencil sharpener 'pensəl  
   'ʃɑ:pənə 15  
 pepper 'pepə 10  
 perfect 'pɜ:fəkt 56  
 Peru pə'ru: 27  
 Peruvian pə'ru:vɪən 27  
 pet pet 31  
 petrol 'petrəl 32  
 phone fəʊn 13, 21, 25  
 phone a friend fəʊn ə frend 47  
 phone box fəʊn bɒks 16  
 phone call 'fəʊn kɔ:l 16  
 phone case fəʊn keɪs 17  
 phone number fəʊn 'nʌmbə 16  
 photo 'fəʊtəʊ 43  
 photograph 'fəʊtəgrɑ:f 43  
 physics 'fɪzɪks 15  
 pianist 'pi:ənɪst 26  
 piano pi'ænəʊ 26  
 picture 'pɪktʃə 13  
 piece of paper pi:əs əv 'peɪpə 15  
 pig pɪg 31  
 piglet 'pɪglət 31  
 PIN pɪn 17  
 pineapple 'paɪnæpl 10  
 pitch pɪtʃ 23  
 pizza 'pi:tʃə 10  
 place pleɪs 22  
 plane pleɪn 18, 32  
 plaster 'plɑ:stə 36  
 plate pleɪt 11, 55  
 play pleɪ 23, 24, 25  
 play a musical instrument pleɪ ə  
   'mju:zɪkəl 'ɪnstɾəmənt 26  
 play in an orchestra pleɪ ɪn ɒn  
   'ɔ:kɪstrə 26  
 play video games pleɪ 'vɪdɪəʊ  
   geɪmz 25  
 please pli:z 8, 48  
 please keep off the grass pli:z  
   ki:p əv ðə grɑ:s 29  
 Poland 'pəʊlənd 27  
 police pə'li:s 34  
 police officer pə'li:s 'ɒfɪsə 14  
 Polish 'pəʊlɪʃ 27  
 polluted pə'lu:tɪd 37  
 pollution pə'lu:ʃən 37  
 pool pu:l 23  
 poor pɔ: 37  
 pop music pɒp 'mju:zɪk 26  
 pork pɔ:k 31  
 Portuguese ,pɔ:tʃə'gi:z 27  
 position pə'zɪʃən 53  
 post pəʊst 16, 29  
 post code 'pəʊst kəʊd 20  
 post office pəʊst 'ɒfɪs 19, 29  
 postcard 'pəʊstkɑ:d 18  
 potato(es) pə'teɪtəʊ 10, 22  
 power button 'paʊə 'bʌtən 17  
 prefer prɪ'fɜ: 7  
 pre-heat prɪ hi:t 58  
 pre-school prɪ sku:l 58  
 present 'prezənt 52  
 pretty 'prɪti 5  
 price praɪs 20  
 primary school  
   'praɪməri sku:l 33  
 Prime Minister  
   praɪm 'mɪnɪstə 33  
 prison 'prɪzən 34  
 private school 'praɪvɪt sku:l 33  
 problem 'prɒbləm 37  
 programme 'prəʊgræm 25, 35  
 proud of praʊd əv 57  
 pub pʌb 22  
 pull pʊl 19  
 push pʊʃ 19  
 put... on pʊt ɒn 4, 46  
 put on pʊt ɒn 36, 46  
 pyjamas pɪ'dʒɑ:məz 4, 12  
 queen kwɪn 33  
 quickly 'kwɪkli 59  
 quiet 'kwaɪət 54, 60  
 quietly 'kwaɪətli 54  
 quite kwaɪt 60  
 rabbit 'ræbɪt 31  
 radio 'reɪdɪəʊ 12, 13, 25, 35  
 railway station  
   'reɪlweɪ 'steɪʃən 29  
 rain reɪn 28  
 rainy 'reɪni 28  
 rare reə 22  
 rarely 'reəli 52  
 razor 'reɪzə 12  
 read ri:d 13, 15, 25, 35  
 ready to order 'redi tə 'ɔ:ɪdə 22  
 reality TV ri'æləti ,ti:'vi: 35  
 really 'riəli 7, 9  
 receipt ri'si:t 19  
 recently 'ri:səntli 52  
 reception ri'sepʃən 21  
 redo 'ri:,du: 58  
 relations ri'reɪʃənz 1  
 relatives 'relətɪvz 1  
 relax ri'læks 6, 13  
 remote control  
   ri'məʊt kən'trəʊl 13  
 repair ri'peə 36  
 reply ri'plai 48  
 reporter ri'pɔ:tə 35  
 reservation ,rezə'veɪʃən 21  
 reserve (a seat) ri'zɜ:v 32  
 restaurant 'restɾənt 14, 19, 22  
 restaurant car 'restɾənt kɑ: 32  
 return ticket ri'tɜ:n 'tɪkɪt 32  
 review ri'vju: 20  
 rewrite 'ri:raɪt 58  
 rice raɪs 10, 55  
 ride raɪd 49  
 right raɪt 29, 53, 54  
 right way raɪt wei 54  
 ring rɪŋ 4  
 river 'rɪvə 30  
 road rəʊd 29

roast beef	rəʊst bi:f	33	send a postcard	send ə	soap	səʊp	12	
roast potatoes	rəʊst		pəʊstka:d	18	soap opera	'səʊp,ɒpərə	35	
	pə'teɪtəʊz	33	send a text (message)	send ə	socket	'sɒkɪt	13	
rob	rɒb	34	tekst	16	socks	sɒks	4	
robber	'rɒbə	34	separated	'sepəreɪtɪd	2	sofa	'səʊfə	13
robbery	'rɒbəri	34	September	sep'tembə	51	soft drink(s)	sɒft drɪŋk	22
rock	rɒk	26	shampoo	ʃəm'puː	12	sometimes	'sʌmtaɪmz	47, 52
romantic (comedy)			sheep	ʃi:p	31	son	sʌn	1
	rə'mɒntɪk	24	shelf	ʃelf	11, 12	song	sɒŋ	26
room service	'ru:m ,sɜ:vɪs	21	ship	ʃɪp	32	soon	su:n	52
room with a view			shirt	ʃɜ:t	4	sorry	'sɒri	8
	ru:m wɪð ə vjuː	21	shoe(s)	ʃuː	4, 55	soup (of the day)	su:p	22
routine	ru:'ti:n	12	shop	ʃɒp	14, 19, 29	South Africa	sauθ 'frɪkə	27
row	raʊ	36	shop assistant	ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt	14	South African	sauθ 'frɪkən	27
royal family	'rɔɪəl 'fɪməli	33	shop online	ʃɒpə:nlaɪn	20	South America		
rubber	'rʌbə	15	shoplifter	ʃɒplɪftə	34		sauθ ə'merɪkə	27
rucksack	'rʌksɪk	18	shoplifting	'ʃɒplɪftɪŋ	34	spaghetti	spə'geti	55
rug	rʌg	13	shopping	'ʃɒpɪŋ	19	Spain	speɪn	27
rugby	'rʌɡbi	23	shopping centre	'ʃɒpɪŋ		Spanish	'spæɪnɪʃ	27
ruler	'ru:lə	15	'sentə	29	speak	spi:k	48	
run	rʌn	49	short	ʃɔ:t	5	speak to	spi:k tə	16
running	'rʌnɪŋ	23	shorts	ʃɔ:ts	4	spoon	spu:n	11
rush hour	rʌʃaʊə	37	shoulder	'ʃəʊldə	3	sports	spɔ:ts	23, 35
sad	sæd	7	shower	'ʃaʊə	12, 21, 38	sports centre	spɔ:ts 'sentə	23
sadness	'sædnəs	59	shower gel	'ʃaʊə dʒel	12	sports magazine	spɔ:ts	
sailing	'seɪlɪŋ	23	sick	sɪk	6		mæɡə'zi:n	35
salad	'sæləd	22	side	sɑɪd	3, 29, 53	sports programme	spɔ:ts	
salmon fillet	'sæmən 'fɪlɪt	22	sign	sɑɪn	19, 21		prəʊɡræm	35
salt	sɔlt	10	SIM card	'sɪm kɑ:d	17	spring	sprɪŋ	51
sandy	'sændi	59	single	'sɪŋɡəl	2	stamp	stæmp	16
Saturday	'sætədeɪ	51	single room	'sɪŋɡəl ru:m	21	starter	'stɑ:tə	22
saucepan	'sɔ:spən	11	single ticket	'sɪŋɡəl 'tɪkɪt	32	state school	steɪt sku:l	33
say	seɪ	48	sink	sɪŋk	11	station	'steɪʃən	29
save	seɪv	17	sister	'sɪstə	1	stay	steɪ	25
scarf	skɑ:f	4	size	saɪz	19, 20	steak	steɪk	22
school	sku:l	15	skiing	'ski:ŋ	23, 30	steal	sti:l	34
science fiction	saɪəns 'fɪkʃən		skin	skɪn	3, 5	stomach	'stʌmək	3
		24	skirt	skɜ:t	4	storm	stɔ:m	28
Scottish	'skɒtɪʃ	27	sleep	slɪp	25	strawberry (-ies)	'strɔ:bəri	10
screen	skri:n	16, 17	sleep well	slɪp wel	8	stressed	strest	6
search	sɜ:tʃ	20	slim	slɪm	5	strike	straɪk	37
season	'si:zən	51	slow	sləʊ	54	student	'stju:dənt	15
seat	sɪt	32	slowly	'sləʊli	54	study	'stʌdi	15
second	'sekənd	19, 51	smaller (size)	smɔ:lə	19	subject	'sʌbdʒəkt	15
secondary school			snack	snæk	22	sugar	'ʃʊɡə	10, 55
	'sekəndri sku:l	33	snake	sneɪk	31	suit	su:t	4
secretary	'sekrətəri	14	sneeze	sni:z	6	suitcase	'su:tkeɪs	18
see	siː	24, 25	snow	snəʊ	28	summer	'sʌmə	51
See you soon	siː juː su:n	8	snowboarding	'snəʊbɔ:ɪdɪŋ	23	sun	sʌn	28
selfies	selfɪs	17	snowing	'snəʊɪŋ	28	Sunday	'sʌndeɪ	51
sell	sel	34	snowstorm	'snəʊstɔ:m	37	sunglasses	'sʌn,ɡlɑ:sɪz	4
sell drugs	sel drʌɡz	34	snowy	'snəʊi	28	sunny	'sʌni	28, 59
			so	səʊ	50	supermarket	'su:pə,mɑ:kɪt	19

- surprised sə'praɪzd 7  
 sweater 'swetə 4  
 swim swɪm 38, 49  
 swimmer 'swɪmə 59  
 swimming 'swɪmɪŋ 23  
 swimming pool  
     'swɪmɪŋ pu:l 23  
 swipe swaɪp 17  
 switch on swɪtʃ ɒn 13  
 table 'teɪbəl 13  
 table tennis 'teɪbəl 'tenɪs 23  
 take teɪk 34, 43, 44, 49  
 take (some) lessons  
     teɪk 'lesənz 43  
 take ... for a walk  
     teɪk fɔ: ə wɔ:k 31  
 take ... off teɪk ɒf 4  
 take a course teɪk ə kɔ:s 43  
 take a message teɪk ə  
     'mesɪdʒ 16  
 take a photo teɪk ə 'fəʊtəʊ 43  
 take a taxi teɪk ə 'tæksi 43  
 take an exam teɪk ən  
     ɪg'zæm 15, 43  
 take drugs teɪk drʌgz 34  
 take off teɪk ɒf 32, 46  
 take the bus teɪk ðə bʌs 29, 43  
 take the lift teɪk ðə lɪft 21  
 take the train teɪk ðə treɪn 43  
 take the underground teɪk ðə  
     'ʌndəgraʊnd 43  
 take-away teɪk ə'weɪ 22  
 talk tɔ:k 25, 48  
 talk to tɔ:k tu: 25  
 talk show tɔ:k ʃəʊ 35  
 tall tə:l 5  
 tap tæp 11  
 taxi 'tæksi 32, 43  
 taxi driver 'tæksi 'draɪvə 14  
 tea ti: 10, 38, 55  
 tea towel ti: təʊəl 11  
 teach ti:tʃ 15  
 teacher 'ti:tʃə 14, 15  
 teapot 'ti:pɒt 11  
 teenage 'ti:neɪdʒ 35  
 teenage magazine ti:neɪdʒ  
     ,mægə'zi:n 35  
 teeth ti:θ 3  
 telephone (phone) 'telɪfəʊn  
     12, 16  
 television (TV) 'telɪvɪʒən 12,  
     13, 35  
 tell (someone) a joke  
     tel ə dʒəʊk 48  
 tell (someone) a story  
     tel ə 'stɔ:ri 48  
 tell (someone) the time  
     tel ðə taɪm 48  
 tell someone you called tel  
     'sʌmwʌn ju: kɔ:ld 16  
 tell someone your address  
     tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔ: ə'dres 48  
 tell someone your name  
     tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔ: neɪm 48  
 tell someone your phone number  
     tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔ: fəʊn 'nʌmbə  
     48  
 tennis 'tenɪs 23  
 terrible 'terəbəl 56  
 terrorism 'terərɪzəm 34  
 terrorist 'terərɪst 34  
 text tekst 16, 17  
 textbook 'teksbʊk 15  
 Thai taɪ 27  
 Thailand 'taɪlənd 27  
 than ðæn 50  
 thank for θæŋk fɔ: 57  
 Thank you θæŋk ju: 8, 48  
 thanks θæŋks 8  
 then ðen 52  
 there ðeə 53  
 there's a ... ðeəz ə 29  
 thief θɪ:f 34  
 thin θɪn 5  
 think about θɪŋk ə'baʊt 57  
 third θɜ:ɪd 19  
 thirsty 'θɜ:stɪ 7  
 thriller 'θrɪlə 24  
 thumb θʌm 3  
 thunder 'θʌndə 28  
 thunderstorm 'θʌndəstɔ:m 28  
 thundery 'θʌndəri 28  
 Thursday 'θɜ:zdeɪ 51  
 ticket 'tɪkɪt 32  
 tidy 'taɪdi 36  
 tie taɪ 4  
 tiger 'taɪgə 31  
 tights taɪts 4  
 time taɪm 51, 52  
 timetable 'taɪm,tɛɪbəl 32  
 (four) times a month  
     taɪmz ə mʌnθ 52  
 (three) times a week  
     taɪmz ə wɪk 47  
 tired taɪəd 7  
 today tə'deɪ 51, 52  
 toe təʊ 3  
 toilet 'tɔɪlət 12  
 tomato(es) tə'mɑ:təʊ 10  
 tomorrow tə'mɒrəʊ 51, 52  
 too tu: 50  
 too much (work) tu: mʌtʃ 36  
 tooth tu:θ 3  
 toothache 'tu:θeɪk 6  
 toothbrush 'tu:θbrʌʃ 12  
 toothpaste 'tu:θpeɪst 12  
 top tɒp 53  
 tortoise 'tɔɪtəs 31  
 tourist (information) office  
     'tʊərɪst 'ɒfɪs 29  
 towel təʊəl 12  
 town taʊn 29, 30  
 town hall taʊn hɔ:l 29, 29  
 toys tɔɪz 19  
 traffic 'træfɪk 55  
 traffic jam 'træfɪk dʒʌm 37  
 traffic warden  
     'træfɪk 'wɔ:ɪdən 14  
 train treɪn 14, 18, 29, 32  
 trainers 'treɪnəz 4  
 train station treɪn 'steɪʃən 29  
 transport 'trænspɔ:t 18, 32, 49  
 travel 'trævəl 55  
 travelling 'trævəlɪŋ 32  
 tropical 'trɒpɪkəl 6  
 trousers 'traʊzəz 4  
 trumpet 'trʌmpɪt 26  
 trumpet-player  
     'trʌmpɪt 'pleɪə 26  
 try on traɪ ɒn 19  
 T-shirt 'ti:ʃɜ:t 4  
 Tuesday 'tju:zdeɪ 51  
 Tunisia tju:'ni:ziə 27  
 Tunisian tju:'ni:ziən 27  
 turn tɜ:n 29  
 turn down tɜ:n daʊn 46  
 turn off tɜ:n ɒf 12, 13, 46  
 turn on tɜ:n ɒn 13, 46  
 turn up tɜ:n ʌp 46  
 TV ,ti:'vi: 13, 21, 24, 25, 35  
 twice twaɪs 52  
 ugly 'ʌgli 5  
 UK ,ju:'keɪ 27  
 umbrella ʌm'brelə 4  
 uncle 'ʌŋkəl 1  
 uncountable ʌn'kaʊntəbəl 55  
 underground 'ʌndəgraʊnd 32  
 unemployed ,ʌnɪm'plɔɪd 37

unfriendly (way) <b>ʌn'frendli</b> <u>54</u>	washing machine <b>'wɒʃɪŋ</b>	Where can I find ...?
unhappy <b>ʌn'hʌpi</b> <u>58</u>	<b>mə'ʃi:n</b> <u>11</u>	<b>wəə kən aɪ faɪnd</b> <u>11</u>
United States (the US)	washing-up liquid <b>'wɒʃɪŋ ʌp</b>	Where does ... go?
<b>juːˌnaɪtɪd 'steɪts</b> <u>27</u>	<b>'lɪkwɪd</b> <u>11</u>	<b>wəə dəz ... ɡəʊ</b> <u>11</u>
university <b>ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsəti</b> <u>15</u>	watch <b>wɒtʃ</b> <u>4, 23, 24,</u>	Where is ...? <b>wɛər ɪz</b> <u>29</u>
unlock <b>ʌn'lɒk</b> <u>17</u>	watch television (TV) <b>wɒtʃ</b>	whiteboard <b>'waɪtbɔːd</b> <u>15</u>
unsafe <b>ʌn'seɪf</b> <u>58</u>	<b>televɪʒən</b> <u>25, 47</u>	Why don't ...? <b>wai dəʊnt</b> <u>9</u>
untidy <b>ʌn'taɪdi</b> <u>36</u>	watch a DVD <b>wɒtʃ ə</b>	widowed <b>'wɪdəʊd</b> <u>2</u>
upset <b>ʌp'set</b> <u>7</u>	<b>diːviːdiː</b> <u>25</u>	wife <b>wɑɪf</b> <u>1</u>
upstairs <b>ʌp'steəz</b> <u>12</u>	watch TV online <b>wɒtʃ tiːviː</b>	wild animal <b>wɑɪld 'ɪnɪməl</b> <u>31</u>
USA <b>ˌjuːs'eɪ</b> <u>27</u>	<b>ɒnlɑɪn</b> <u>36</u>	wildlife <b>'waɪldlaɪf</b> <u>30</u>
used to <b>'juːs tu</b> <u>57</u>	water <b>'wɔːtə</b> <u>31, 36, 55</u>	wind <b>wɪnd</b> <u>28</u>
useful <b>'juːsfəl</b> <u>59</u>	way <b>weɪ</b> <u>54</u>	window <b>'wɪndəʊ</b> <u>13</u>
useless <b>'juːsləs</b> <u>59</u>	wear <b>wɛə</b> <u>4</u>	windy <b>'wɪndi</b> <u>28</u>
usually <b>'juːʒəli</b> <u>47, 52</u>	weather <b>'weðə</b> <u>28, 55</u>	wine <b>wɑɪn</b> <u>10</u>
Valentine's Day	wedding <b>'wedɪŋ</b> <u>2</u>	winter <b>'wɪntə</b> <u>51</u>
<b>'vɛləntaɪnz deɪ</b> <u>33</u>	Wednesday <b>'wenzdeɪ</b> <u>51</u>	winter holiday <b>'wɪntə</b>
vandal <b>'vʌndəl</b> <u>34</u>	week <b>wiːk</b> <u>51, 52</u>	<b>'hɒlədeɪ</b> <u>18</u>
vandalism <b>'vʌndəlɪzəm</b> <u>34</u>	weekend <b>ˌwiːk'end</b> <u>51</u>	women's magazine <b>'wɪmɪnz</b>
vegetable(s) <b>'vedʒtəbəl</b> <u>10, 22,</u>	weigh <b>weɪ</b> <u>2, 5</u>	<b>mʌŋɡə'zɪn</b> <u>35</u>
<u>25</u>	weight <b>weɪt</b> <u>5</u>	women's wear <b>wɪmɪnz wɛə</b> <u>19</u>
vegetarian <b>ˌvedʒɪ'teəriən</b> <u>10</u>	well <b>wel</b> <u>6, 7, 54</u>	wonderful <b>'wʌndəfəl</b> <u>56</u>
very (bad / good) <b>'veri</b> <u>56</u>	Well done <b>wel dʌn</b> <u>8, 9</u>	wood <b>wʊd</b> <u>30</u>
very well <b>'veri wel</b> <u>7</u>	well-done <b>ˌwel'dʌn</b> <u>22</u>	wool <b>wʊl</b> <u>31</u>
video games <b>'vɪdɪəʊ ɡeɪmz</b> <u>25</u>	western <b>'westən</b> <u>24</u>	work <b>wɜːk</b> <u>14, 36, 55</u>
village <b>'vɪlɪdʒ</b> <u>30</u>	wet <b>wet</b> <u>28</u>	worker <b>'wɜːkə</b> <u>59</u>
violin <b>ˌvaɪə'lɪn</b> <u>26</u>	What a pity <b>wɒt ə 'pɪti</b> <u>9</u>	worktop <b>'wɜːktɒp</b> <u>11</u>
violinist <b>vaɪə'lɪnɪst</b> <u>26</u>	What about ...? <b>wɒt ə'baʊt</b> <u>9</u>	Would you like ...?
visa <b>'viːzə</b> <u>18</u>	What time do you ....?	<b>wʊd juː laɪk</b> <u>22</u>
voicemail <b>'vɔɪsmeɪl</b> <u>16</u>	<b>wɒt taɪm də juː</b> <u>47</u>	write <b>raɪt</b> <u>15</u>
volleyball <b>'vɒlibɔːl</b> <u>23</u>	What time is.....? <b>wɒt taɪm ɪz</b> <u>21</u>	write emails <b>raɪt ɪːmeɪlz</b> <u>47</u>
waist <b>weɪst</b> <u>3</u>	What would you like...? <b>wɒt wʌd</b>	write letters <b>raɪt 'letəz</b> <u>47</u>
wait for <b>weɪt fɔː</b> <u>57, 60</u>	<b>juː laɪk</b> <u>22</u>	wrong (way) <b>rɒŋ</b> <u>54</u>
waiter <b>'weɪtə</b> <u>14</u>	What's his/her job? <b>wɒts</b>	year <b>jiə</b> <u>51, 52</u>
wake up <b>weɪk ʌp</b> <u>12, 47</u>	<b>hɪz/hɜː dʒɒb</b> <u>14</u>	yesterday <b>'jestədeɪ</b> <u>51</u>
wake-up call <b>weɪk ʌp kɔːl</b> <u>21</u>	What's on ...? <b>wɒts ɒn</b> <u>24</u>	Yorkshire pudding
walk <b>wɔːk</b> <u>30, 49</u>	What's on TV?	<b>'jɔːkʃə 'puɪdɪŋ</b> <u>33</u>
walking holiday	<b>wɒts ɒn ˌtiː'viː</b> <u>35</u>	young(er) <b>jʌŋ</b> <u>5</u>
<b>'wɔːkɪŋ 'hɒlədeɪ</b> <u>18</u>	What's the weather like?	zip code <b>zɪp kəʊd</b> <u>20</u>
want <b>wɒnt</b> <u>7</u>	<b>wɒts ðə 'weðə laɪk</b> <u>28</u>	zoo <b>zuː</b> <u>31</u>
war <b>wɔː</b> <u>37</u>	What's your favourite ...?	
wardrobe <b>'wɔːdrəʊb</b> <u>12</u>	<b>wɒts jɔː 'feɪvərɪt</b> <u>23</u>	
wash <b>wɒʃ</b> <u>3</u>	when <b>wen</b> <u>50</u>	
wash clothes <b>wɒʃ kləʊðz</b> <u>47</u>		

# Irregular verbs

Most verbs in English are regular but some of the most common verbs in English are irregular. The forms here are the infinitive (*go, come*), the past simple (*went, came*) and the past participle (*gone, come*).

## A All forms the same

cost cost cost

cut /kʌt/ cut cut

hurt hurt hurt

let let let

put /pʊt/ put put

shut /ʃʌt/ shut shut

## B Two different forms

beat beat beaten

become became become

bring brought brought

buy bought bought

catch caught caught

come came come

feel felt felt

fight fought fought

find found found

get got got

have had had

hear heard heard

keep kept kept

leave left left

learn learnt learnt

lose lost lost

make made made

meet met met

pay paid /peɪd/ paid

read /ri:d/ read /red/ read /red/

run ran run

say said /sed/ said

sell sold sold

shine shone shone

shoot shot shot

sit sat sat

sleep slept slept

spend spent spent

stand stood stood

teach taught taught

tell told told

think thought thought

win won won

understand understood understood

### C Three different forms

be was/were been

begin began begun

break broke broken

choose chose chosen

do did done

drink drank drunk

drive drove driven

eat ate eaten

fall fell fallen

fly flew flown

forget forgot forgotten

give gave given

go went gone

know knew known

ride rode ridden

rise rose risen

sing sang sung

speak spoke spoken

steal stole stolen

swim swam swum

take took taken

throw threw thrown

wake woke woken

wear wore worn

write wrote written

#### Tip

When you learn a new irregular verb, add it to one of the groups of verbs on these pages.

# How to learn vocabulary

To learn a lot of vocabulary, you have to do different things.

- 1 Study each unit of the book carefully and do all the exercises. Check your answers with your teacher. Repeat the units after a month, and then again after three months, and see how much you have learnt and how much you have forgotten. Repeating work is very important.
- 2 Keep a vocabulary notebook. Students who regularly make notes in a separate notebook often do better in tests and examinations than students who do not keep a notebook.
- 3 Use different ways of recording things in your notebook. For example, every time you see or hear an interesting phrase, write it in your notebook, and write who said it or wrote it, and in what situation, as well as what it means. Here are some examples:

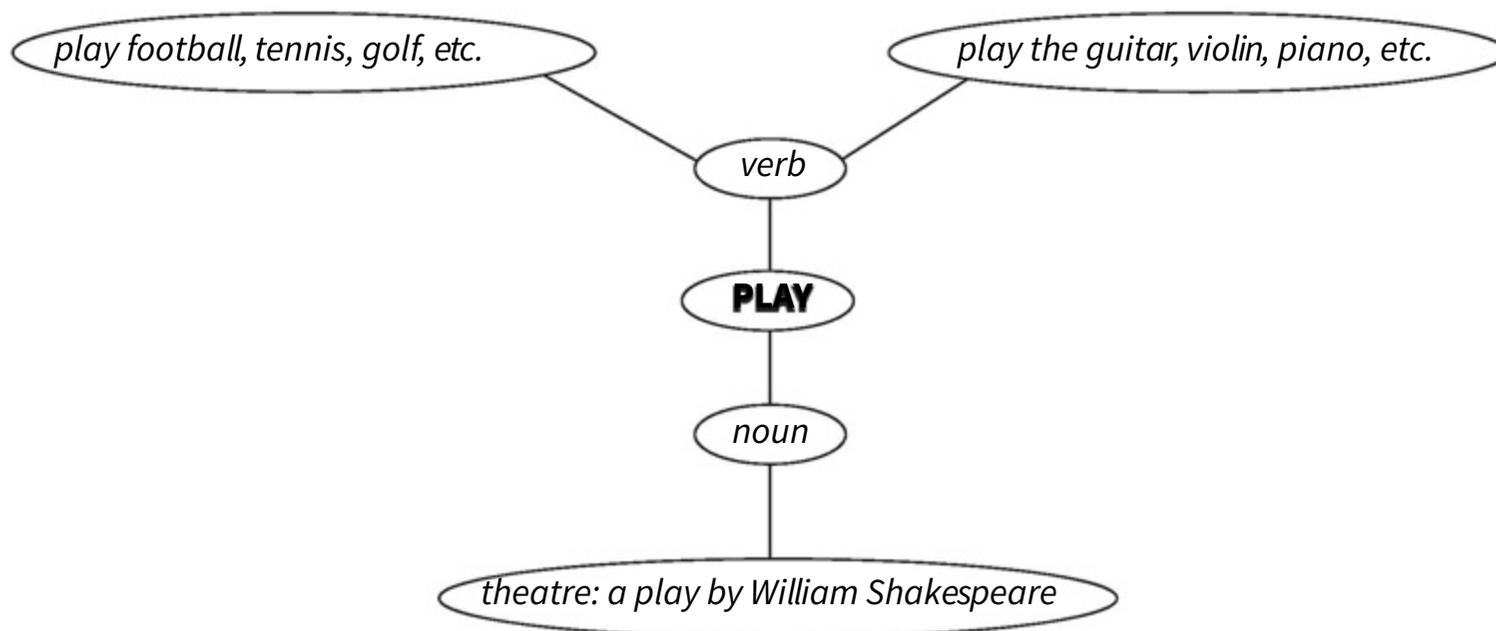
**ready:** (person at the door of a theatre, to all the people waiting) 'Have your tickets ready, please!' = have your ticket in your hand

**else:** (person in a restaurant) 'Would you like anything else?' = more or in addition or different

**rush hour:** (person who is about to leave home for work) 'I'm going early so that I miss the rush hour' = the times when there are lots of people travelling to work in the morning or when people are travelling home in the evening

Making notes of the situations words are used in will help you to remember them and to use them at the right moment.

- 4 Use diagrams and other visual aids to help you learn and remember words and phrases. Word bubbles are very easy to draw and can help you remember the different meanings and uses of words. Here is an example for the word *play*, which can be a verb or a noun:



Charts can also help you to organise information about words. This student has made notes in her vocabulary notebook about useful verbs and the nouns we use them with:

take	a taxi a message violin lessons	catch	a cold a criminal a ball	make	dinner a mistake an appointment	do	my homework somebody a favour my best (to)
------	---------------------------------------	-------	--------------------------------	------	---------------------------------------	----	--

# Acknowledgements

**The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting & in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.**

Key: B = Below, BL = Below Left, BR = Below Right, BC = Below Centre, C = Centre, CL = Centre Left, CR = Centre Right, L = Left, R = Right, T = Top, TR = Top Right, TL = Top Left.

## Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from Getty Images.

p. 10 (T): KidStock/Blend Images; p. 10 (C): Nerida McMurray Photography/DigitalVision/Getty Images Plus; p. 10 (B): RubberBall Productions/Brand X Pictures; p. 11: Georges De Keerle/Hulton Archive; p. 18 (headache): BakiBG/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 18 (toothache): VladimirFLoyd/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 18 (cold): Lyashik/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 18 (sneeze): Moxie Productions/Blend Images/Getty Images Plus; p. 19: Pete Saloutos/Image Source; p. 20: Robert Oelman/Photodisc; p. 22 (morning) & (evening): Korvit78/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (afternoon): Korvit/Shutterstock; p. 22 (TL): Thorsten Jochim/Stock4B; p. 22 (TR): BJI/Blue Jean Images; p. 22 (cheers): Ezra Bailey/Taxi; p. 34 (nurse): Eric Audras/ONOKY; p. 22 (excuse): Inmageasia; p. 22 (sorry): Michael M Schwab/The Image Bank; p. 22 (bless you): Ariel Skelley/Blend Images; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.1): Nils Hendrik Muller/Cultura; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.2): Robert Daly/OJO Images; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.3): Satoshi Kawase/Moment; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.4): michaeljung/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.5): Klaus Tiedge/Blend Images; p. 32 (BC), p. 89 (BL), p. 93 (Ex 43.3.1) & p. 118 (BR): Image Source; p. 23 (Ex 8.2.6) & p. 125 (Ex 59.1.3): Westend61; p. 32 (watch television): antikainen/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 32 (listen to the radio) & p. 47: andresr/E+; p. 32 (reading book): Shestock/Blend Images; p. 32 (relaxing) & p. 57 (Ex 25.1.6): Wavebreakmedia Ltd/Wavebreak Media/Getty Images Plus; p. 32 (BL): Bruskov/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 32 (BR): Roderick Chen/First Light; p. 34 (doctor): Buero Monaco/Taxi; p. 34 (teacher) & p. 89 (TR): PeopleImages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 34 (mechanic): Jetta Productions/Blend Images; p. 34 (secretary): Mohamad Itani/Photolibrary; p. 34 (shop assistant): Greg Pease/The Image Bank; p. 34 (hairstylist): petekarici/E+; p. 34 (engineer): stock\_colors/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 34

(farmer): Monty Rakusen/Cultura; p. 34 (police): Daniel Allan/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 34 (warden): Adam Gault/Photodisc; p. 34 (librarian): Antonello Turchetti/DigitalVision; p. 34 (clerk): Keith Brofsky/Photodisc; p. 34 (waiter): Michael Blann/DigitalVision; p. 34 (BL): JGI/Jamie Grill/Blend Images; p. 38 (letter box): Pawel Libera/LightRocket; p. 38 (computer): arattansi/E+; p. 38 (screen): PC Plus Magazine/Future; p. 38 (keyboard) & (laptop): PC Format Magazine/Future; p. 38 (mouse): stockcam/E+; p. 38 (memory stick): Krasnyuk/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 38 (mobile device), p. 39 (Ex 16.2.10) & p. 46 (photo 2): pagadesign/E+; p. 38 (mobile) & p. 93 (mobile): lvcandy/DigitalVision Vectors; p. 38 (telephone): Artur Synenko/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 38 (phone box): Robin Hunter/Dorling Kindersley; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.1): MacFormat Magazine/Future; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.2): Richard & Gillian Long/Moment Open; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.3): Anatolii Babii/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.4): Simon Belcher/imageBROKER; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.5): kmaassrock/E+; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.6): PixelEmbargo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.8): Petra Wallner/imageBROKER; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.9): GeorgeManga/DigitalVision Vectors; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.11): Nadore/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.2.12): connect11/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (smartphone): ET-ARTWORKS/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (charger): aimy27feb/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (battery): PhanuwatNandee/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (sim) & p. 42 (train): scanrail/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (case): Tap Magazine/Future; p. 40 (selfie): Instants/E+; p. 40 (swipe): monkeybusinessimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (pin): milindri/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (save): Lunarismemo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (delete): ved007/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (plane): Okea/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (car): Rawpixel/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (ferry): JTB Photo/Universal Images Group; p. 42 (coach): mladn61/E+; p. 42 (passport) p. 42 (camera) & p. 93 (passport): Creative Crop/Photodisc; p. 42 (ticket): Pgium/E+; p. 42 (currency): TKphotography64/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (suitcase): terex/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 42 (rucksack) & p. 43 (Ex 18.4.5): monticello/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.1): maogg/E+; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.2): Terraxplorer/E+; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.3): Creative Crop/DigitalVision; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.4): s-cphoto/E+; p. 43 (Ex 18.4.6): cybrain/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (basket icon): epapijon/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (t-shirt): FlamingPumpkin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (delivery van): art12321/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (checkout): nickylarson974/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 46 (photo 1) & p. 57 (Ex 25.1.5): Jamie Grill; p. 46 (photo 3): chokkicx/DigitalVision Vectors; p. 46

(photo 4): PeopleImages/E+; p. 50: AlexeyBorodin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 51: Tom Grill/The Image Bank; p. 54: Steve Finn/Getty Images Entertainment; p. 55: Keith Hamshere/Moviepix; p. 56 (photo 1): Monkey Business Images/Monkey Business/Getty Images Plus; p. 56 (photo 2): elenaleonova/E+; p. 56 (photo 3): sjenner13/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 56 (photo 4): John Fedele/Blend Images; p. 56 (photo 5): BananaStock/BananaStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 57 (Ex 25.1.1): RuslanDashinsky/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 57 (Ex 25.1.2): Mint Images -Henry Arden/Mint Images RF; p. 57 (Ex 25.1.3): Lumina Images/Blend Images; p. 57 (Ex 25.1.4): Hybrid Images/Cultura; p. 58 (piano): Dmitry Molev/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (cello): gabink/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (guitar): Zoonar RF/Zoonar/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (flute) & p. 58 (trumpet): Hemera Technologies/PhotoObjects. net/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (violin): pepifoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (clarinet): BradWynnyk/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (drums): Stockbyte/Stockbyte; p. 60: InterNetwork Media/Photodisc; p. 61: janrysavvy/E+; p. 64 (exit): desert\_ fox99/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (entrance): giovanecek/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (no-smoking): pepj/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (grass): KevinHolt/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (out of order): mrdoomits/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (horse): Abramova\_Kseniya/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (chicken): Dorling Kindersley; p. 68 (pig): Tsekhmister/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (sheep): Digital Zoo/Photodisc; p. 68 (cow): narvikk/E+; p. 68 (goat, monkey, lion & giraffe), p. 69 (lion, horse, Sheep, monkey & cats): GlobalP/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (elephant): excentric\_ 01/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (snake): Michael Blann/Stone; p. 68 (tiger): luamduan/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (cat): Life On White/Photographer's Choice; p. 68 (rabbit): Life On White/Photodisc; p. 68 (parrot): FlamingPumpkin/E+; p. 68 (dog): Tracy Morgan/Dorling Kindersley; p. 68 (tortoise): amwu/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 68 (goldfish): MirasWonderland/isStock/GettyImages Plus/Getty Images; p. 69 (elephant): rusm/E+; p. 69 (parrot): Les Stocker/Oxford Scientific; p. 69 (tiger) & p. 93 (umbrella): Dave King/Dorling Kindersley; p. 69 (chicken): Richard Clark/Photolibrary; p. 70 (passport): Creative Crop/Photodisc; p. 72 (fish): mtreasure/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 72 (yorkshire): JoeGough/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 72 (curry): LauriPatterson/E+; p. 72 (B): N-Photo Magazine/Future; p. 80 (TL): OMAR TORRES/AFP; p. 80 (TC): Dreef/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 80 (TR): CampPhoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 80 (BL): Danita Delimont/Gallo Images; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.1): Nick Pedersen/Photolibrary; p. 81

(Ex 37.1.2): David McNew/Getty Images News; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.3): OLI SCARFF/AFP; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.4): JOEL SAGET/STR; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.5): Anadolu Agency; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.6): STR; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.7): Scott B Smith Photography/Photolibrary; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.8): Doable/A. collection/amana images; p. 81 (Ex 37.1.9): Byba Sepit/Moment; p. 82 (TR): kupicoo/E+; p. 82 (TL): Tetra Images -Rob Lewine/Brand X Pictures; p. 82 (C): Brauns/E+; p. 82 (hairstylist): leaf/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 83: Alistair Berg/DigitalVision; p. 88 (TL): Jupiterimages/Photolibrary; p. 88 (TR): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images; p. 88 (CL): Jetta Productions/Stone; p. 88 (CR): Jupiterimages/PHOTOS.com/Getty Images Plus; p. 88 (BR): 36clicks/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 89 (TL): Reza Estakhrian/The Image Bank; p. 89 (TC): PeopleImages/DigitalVision; p. 89 (BC): Frank Carter/Lonely Planet Images; p. 89 (BR): Maskot/Maskot; p. 93 (Ex 43.3.2): RODRIGO BUENDIA/AFP; p. 93 (Ex 43.3.3): klohka/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 93 (Ex 43.3.4): JackF/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 93 (camera): yozks/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 93 (notebook): simaso/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 95: fcafotodigital/E+; p. 99 (TL): skynesher/Vetta; p. 99 (BL): Justin-Julius Santos/The Image Bank; p. 99 (TR): AFP/AFP; p. 99 (BR): altrendo images/Stockbyte; p. 103: Nick David/Taxi; p. 107 (T): Jaimie Duplass/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 107 (B): Alistair Berg/The Image Bank; p. 115 (T): Premium/Universal Images Group; p. 115 (B): microgen/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 117: Paul Poplis/Photolibrary; p. 118 (TL): Simon Watson/The Image Bank; p. 118 (TC): Jon Lovette/The Image Bank; p. 118 (BL): John Rensten/Taxi; p. 118 (TR): ZoltanFabian/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 118 (Ex 56. b): Dimitri Otis/Photographer's Choice; p. 118 (Ex 56. c): Keith Berson/Image Source; p. 122: John Greim/LightRocket; p. 124: Cultura RM Exclusive/John Philip Harper/Cultura Exclusive; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.1): Australian Scenics/Photographer's Choice; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.2): vm/E+; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.4): David Lees/DigitalVision; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.5): Larry Washburn; p. 125 (Ex 59.1.6): evemilla/E+; p. 127: Compassionate Eye Foundation/Siri Stafford/DigitalVision.

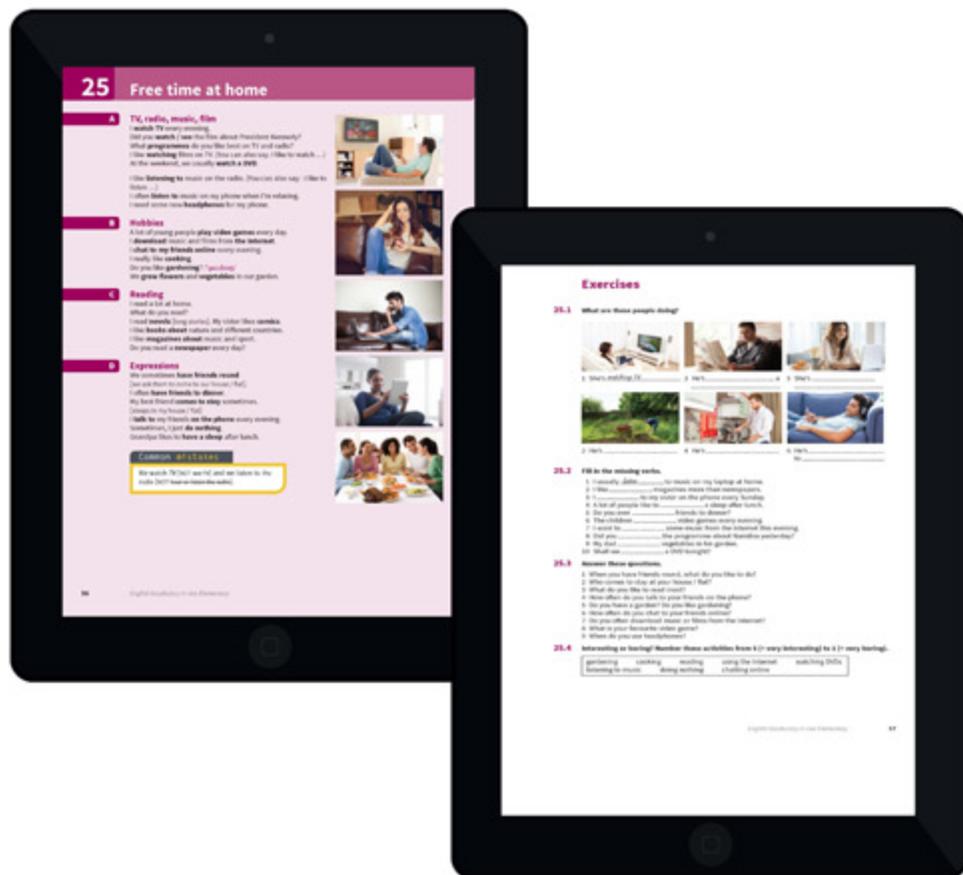
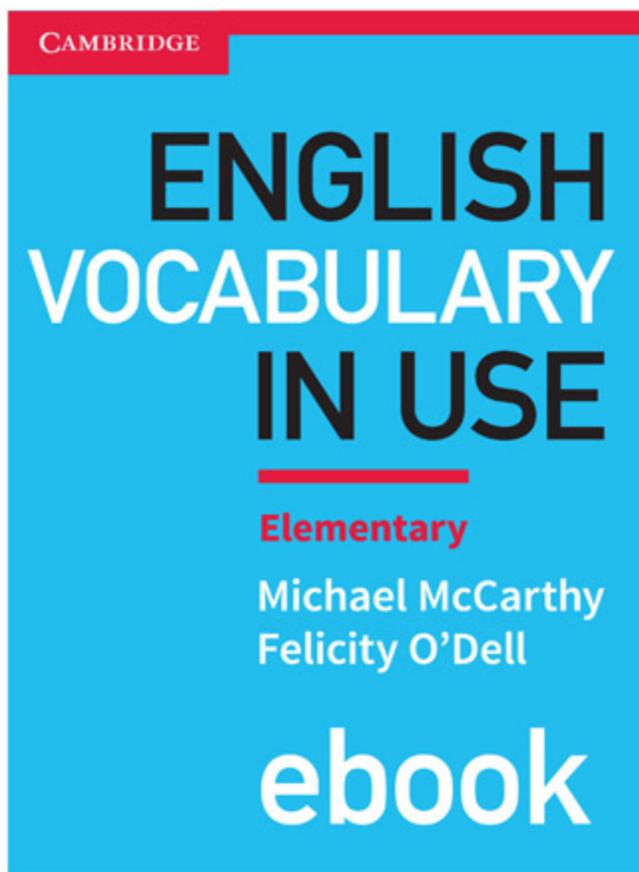
### Illustrations

Pablo Gallego (Beehive Illustration), John Goodwin (Eye Candy Illustration), Daniel Limon (Beehive Illustration), John Lund (Beehive Illustration), Katie Mac (NB Illustration), Martina (KJA Artists), Jorge Santillan (Beehive Illustration), Norbert Sipos (Beehive Illustration), Laszlo Veres (Beehive Illustration), Amanda McPhail, Gary Wing, Gillian Martin, Humberto Blanco, Jo Taylor, Kathy Baxendale, Vicky Woodgate, Kate Charlesworth, Kathryn Baker, Mark Duffin and QBS Learning.

Designed and typeset by QBS.

# Enhanced ebook

You can buy this book with or without an ebook. The ebook has the same vocabulary explanations as the book.



## Using the ebook

You can use your ebook on an iPad, Android tablet, PC or Mac.

You can: listen to the text on the left-hand page, to help you with your listening and pronunciation.

Using the ebook, you can:



**Listen to examples**



**Make notes**



**Highlight text**



**Bookmark pages**

## How to get your ebook

Follow the instructions in the inside front cover of this book.